

1  
2  
3**IEEE P802.15****Wireless Personal Area Networks**


---

Project	IEEE P802.15 Working Group for Wireless Personal Area Networks (WPANs)
Title	IEEE Std 802.15.4e-D0.01/r3
Date Submitted	2009/09/13
Source	[Ludwig Winkel, Zafer Sahinoglu, Liang Li], and fed by the following subgroups: PA, FA, E-GTS, Low-Energy, Short-Header] Voice: [] E-mail: [ludwig.winkel@siemens.com,] [liang_1@yahoo.com,] [zafer@merl.com]
Re:	[]
Abstract	[1 <sup>st</sup> draft IEEE Std 802.15.4e-D0.01 based on submissions of the PA-, FA-, E-GTS-, Low-Energy-subgroups, of TG4e. Changes r1 to r2: Integrated the EGTS and Low Energy contributions Changes r2 to r3: Spelling improvements]
Purpose	[]
Notice	This document has been prepared to assist the IEEE P802.15. It is offered as a basis for discussion and is not binding on the contributing individual(s) or organization(s). The material in this document is subject to change in form and content after further study. The contributor(s) reserve(s) the right to add, amend or withdraw material contained herein.
Release	The contributor acknowledges and accepts that this contribution becomes the property of IEEE and may be made publicly available by P802.15.

---

4

1 **IEEE P802.15.4e™/D0.01**  
2 **Draft Standard for Information**  
3 **technology— Telecommunications and**  
4 **information exchange between**  
5 **systems— Local and metropolitan area**  
6 **networks— Specific requirements—**  
7 **Part 15.4: Wireless Medium Access**  
8 **Control (MAC) and Physical Layer**  
9 **(PHY) Specifications for Low-Rate**  
10 **Wireless Personal Area Networks**  
11 **(WPANs) Amendment 1: Add MAC**  
12 **enhancements for industrial**  
13 **applications and CWPAN**

14 Prepared by the LAN/MAN Standards Committee Working Group of the  
15 IEEE Computer Society Committee

16 Copyright © 2009 by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.  
17 Three Park Avenue  
18 New York, New York 10016-5997, USA  
19 All rights reserved.

20 This document is an unapproved draft of a proposed IEEE Standard. As such, this document is subject to  
21 change. USE AT YOUR OWN RISK! Because this is an unapproved draft, this document must not be  
22 utilized for any conformance/compliance purposes. Permission is hereby granted for IEEE Standards  
23 Committee participants to reproduce this document for purposes of international standardization  
24 consideration. Prior to adoption of this document, in whole or in part, by another standards development  
25 organization, permission must first be obtained from the IEEE Standards Activities Department  
26 (stds.ipr@ieee.org). Other entities seeking permission to reproduce this document, in whole or in part, must  
27 also obtain permission from the IEEE Standards Activities Department.

28 IEEE Standards Activities Department  
29 445 Hoes Lane  
30 Piscataway, NJ 08854, USA

1 **Abstract:** First draft of 802 WG15 TG4e. Amendment to IEEE Std 802.15.4-2009  
2 **Keywords:** Amendment for application domains like Process automation, Low latency,  
3 Commercial, and enhancements for Security, low energy, etc.  
4

5

---

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.  
3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5997, USA

Copyright © 200X by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.  
All rights reserved. Published XX Month XXXX. Printed in the United States of America.

IEEE is a registered trademark in the U.S. Patent & Trademark Office, owned by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Incorporated.

PDF: ISBN 978-0-XXXX-XXXX-X STDXXXXX  
Print: ISBN 978-0-XXXX-XXXX-X STDPDXXXXX

*No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.*

1 This page is left blank intentionally.



## 1 Introduction

2 This introduction is not part of IEEE P802.15.4e/D0.01, Draft Standard for Information technology—  
3 Telecommunications and information exchange between systems— Local and metropolitan area networks— Specific  
4 requirements— Part 15.4: Wireless Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications for Low-  
5 Rate Wireless Personal Area Networks (WPANs) Amendment 1: Add MAC enhancements for industrial applications  
6 and CWPAN.

## 7 Notice to users

8 **Text formatted as this line means an editor note and will be removed before**  
9 **publication.**

## 10 Laws and regulations

11 Users of these documents should consult all applicable laws and regulations. Compliance with the provisions  
12 of this standard does not imply compliance to any applicable regulatory requirements. Implementers of the  
13 standard are responsible for observing or referring to the applicable regulatory requirements. IEEE does not,  
14 by the publication of its standards, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and  
15 these documents may not be construed as doing so.

## 16 Copyrights

17 This document is copyrighted by the IEEE. It is made available for a wide variety of both public and private  
18 uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation,  
19 standardization, and the promotion of engineering practices and methods. By making this document  
20 available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, the IEEE does not waive any rights in  
21 copyright to this document.

## 22 Updating of IEEE documents

23 Users of IEEE standards should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the  
24 issuance of new editions or may be amended from time to time through the issuance of amendments,  
25 corrigenda, or errata. An official IEEE document at any point in time consists of the current edition of the  
26 document together with any amendments, corrigenda, or errata then in effect. In order to determine whether  
27 a given document is the current edition and whether it has been amended through the issuance of  
28 amendments, corrigenda, or errata, visit the IEEE Standards Association web site at  
29 <http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/standards.jsp>, or contact the IEEE at the address listed previously.

30 For more information about the IEEE Standards Association or the IEEE standards development process,  
31 visit the IEEE-SA web site at <http://standards.ieee.org>.

## 32 Errata

33 Errata, if any, for this and all other standards can be accessed at the following URL:  
34 <http://standards.ieee.org/reading/ieee/updates/errata/index.html>. Users are encouraged to check this URL for  
35 errata periodically.

## 36 Interpretations

37 Current interpretations can be accessed at the following URL: [http://standards.ieee.org/reading/ieee/interp/](http://standards.ieee.org/reading/ieee/interp/index.html)  
38 [index.html](http://standards.ieee.org/reading/ieee/interp/index.html).

## 1 Patents

2 Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter  
 3 covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or  
 4 validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. The IEEE is not responsible for identifying Essential  
 5 Patent Claims for which a license may be required, for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope  
 6 of Patents Claims or determining whether any licensing terms or conditions provided in connection with  
 7 submission of a Letter of Assurance, if any, or in any licensing agreements are reasonable or non-  
 8 discriminatory. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any patent  
 9 rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility. Further information  
 10 may be obtained from the IEEE Standards Association.

## 11 Participants

12 At the time this draft standard was submitted to the IEEE-SA Standards Board for approval, the LAN/MAN  
 13 Standards Committee Working Group had the following membership:

14	<b>Bob Heile, Chair</b>		
15	<b>Pat Kinney, Vice Chair</b>		
16			
17	Participant1	20 Participant4	23 Participant7
18	Participant2	21 Participant5	24 Participant8
19	Participant3	22 Participant6	25 Participant9

26  
 27  
 28 The following members of the [individual/entity] balloting committee voted on this standard. Balloters may  
 29 have voted for approval, disapproval, or abstention.

30  
 31 (to be supplied by IEEE)

32  
 33 Participant1  
 34 Participant2  
 35 Participant3  
 36 Participant4  
 37 Participant5  
 38 Participant6  
 39 Participant7  
 40 Participant8  
 41 Participant9





1	<b>Contents</b>	
2	1. Overview .....	1
3	2. Normative references.....	1
4	3. Definitions.....	2
5	4. Acronyms and abbreviations .....	2
6	5. General description.....	3
7	5.1 Introduction.....	3
8	5.2 Components of the IEEE 802.15.4 WPAN .....	3
9	5.3 Network topologies .....	3
10	5.3.1 Star network formation .....	3
11	5.3.2 Peer-to-peer network formation.....	3
12	5.3.3 LL-Star network for wireless low latency networks .....	3
13	5.3.3.1 General.....	3
14	5.3.3.2 TDMA Access .....	3
15	5.3.3.3 Addressing.....	3
16	5.3.3.4 Network Topology.....	4
17	5.4 Architecture.....	4
18	5.5 Functional overview.....	4
19	5.5.1 Superframe structure.....	4
20	5.5.1.1 General.....	4
21	5.5.1.2 Superframe structure based on Beacons .....	4
22	5.5.1.3 Superframe structure based on Beacons with 1-octet MAC header.....	5
23	5.5.2 Data transfer model.....	6
24	5.5.2.1 Data transfer to a coordinator .....	6
25	5.5.2.2 Data transfer from a coordinator.....	7
26	5.5.3 .....	7
27	5.5.4 Improving probability of successful delivery.....	7
28	5.5.4.1 CSMA-CA mechanism.....	7
29	5.5.4.2 ALOHA mechanism for the UWB device.....	8
30	5.5.5 .....	8
31	5.5.5.1 Additional power saving features provided by the UWB PHY .....	8
32	5.5.5.2 Low-energy mechanisms .....	8
33	5.5.6 Security.....	8
34	5.5.7 .....	8
35	5.5.8 .....	8
36	5.6 Concept of primitives.....	9
37	6. PHY specification.....	9
38	6.1.....	9
39	6.1.1 .....	9
40	6.1.2 .....	9
41	7. MAC sublayer specification .....	9
42	7.1 MAC sublayer service specification.....	9
43	7.1.1 MAC data service .....	9
44	7.1.1.1 MCPS-DATA.request.....	9
45	7.1.1.1.1 Semantics of the service primitive.....	9
46	7.1.1.1.1.1 General.....	9
47	7.1.1.1.1.2 PA-Semantics of the service primitive.....	9
48	7.1.1.1.2 When generated .....	10
49	7.1.1.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	10
50	7.1.1.2 MCPS-DATA.confirm.....	11
51	7.1.1.2.1 Semantics of the service primitive.....	11
52	7.1.1.2.1.1 General .....	11
53	7.1.1.2.1.2 PA-Semantics of the service primitive.....	11

1	7.1.1.2.2 When generated	11
2	7.1.1.2.3 Appropriate usage	11
3	7.1.1.3 MCPS-DATA indication	11
4	7.1.2 MAC management service	11
5	7.1.2.1 General	12
6	7.1.2.2 PA-MAC management service	12
7	7.1.2.3 LL-MAC management service	12
8	7.1.2.4 CM-MAC management service	12
9	7.1.3 Association primitives	13
10	7.1.4 Disassociation primitives	13
11	7.1.5 Beacon notification primitive	13
12	7.1.6	13
13	7.1.7 GTS management primitives	13
14	7.1.7.1 MLME-GTS.request	13
15	7.1.8	13
16	7.1.9	13
17	7.1.10	13
18	7.1.11	13
19	7.1.12	13
20	7.1.13	13
21	7.1.14 MLME-START	13
22	7.1.15	13
23	7.1.16 Primitives for requesting data from a coordinator	13
24	7.1.17 Primitives for specifying dynamic preamble (for UWB PHYs)	13
25	7.1.18	13
26	7.1.19	13
27	7.1.20 MAC enumeration description	13
28	7.1.21 PA-specific MAC sublayer service specification	14
29	7.1.21.1 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME	14
30	7.1.21.1.1 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request	14
31	7.1.21.1.1.1 General	14
32	7.1.21.1.1.2 Semantics	14
33	7.1.21.1.1.3 When generated	15
34	7.1.21.1.1.4 Effect on receipt	15
35	7.1.21.1.2 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm	15
36	7.1.21.1.2.1 General	15
37	7.1.21.1.2.2 Semantics	15
38	7.1.21.1.2.3 When generated	15
39	7.1.21.1.2.4 Effect on receipt	16
40	7.1.21.2 MLME-SET-LINK	16
41	7.1.21.2.1 MLME-SET-LINK.request	16
42	7.1.21.2.1.1 General	16
43	7.1.21.2.1.2 Semantics	16
44	7.1.21.2.1.3 When generated	17
45	7.1.21.2.1.4 Effect on receipt	17
46	7.1.21.2.2 MLME-SET-LINK.confirm	17
47	7.1.21.2.2.1 General	17
48	7.1.21.2.2.2 Semantics	17
49	7.1.21.2.2.3 When generated	18
50	7.1.21.2.2.4 Effect on receipt	18
51	7.1.21.3 MLME-PA-MODE	18
52	7.1.21.3.1 MLME-PA-MODE.request	18
53	7.1.21.3.1.1 Semantics	18
54	7.1.21.3.1.2 When generated	18
55	7.1.21.3.1.3 Effect on receipt	19
56	7.1.21.3.2 MLME-PA-MODE.confirm	19
57	7.1.21.3.2.1 Semantics	19
58	7.1.21.3.2.2 When generated	19
59	7.1.21.3.2.3 Effect on receipt	19
60	7.1.21.4 MLME-LISTEN	19
61	7.1.21.4.1 MLME-LISTEN.request	19
62	7.1.21.4.1.1 Semantics	19
63	7.1.21.4.1.2 When generated	20

1	7.1.21.4.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	20
2	7.1.21.4.2 MLME-LISTEN.confirm .....	20
3	7.1.21.4.2.1 Semantics .....	20
4	7.1.21.4.2.2 When generated .....	21
5	7.1.21.4.2.3 Effect on receipt .....	21
6	7.1.21.5 MLME-ADVERTISE .....	21
7	7.1.21.5.1 MLME-ADVERTISE.request .....	21
8	7.1.21.5.1.1 Semantics .....	21
9	7.1.21.5.1.2 When generated .....	22
10	7.1.21.5.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	22
11	7.1.21.5.2 ADVERTISE.indication .....	22
12	7.1.21.5.2.1 Semantics .....	22
13	7.1.21.5.2.2 When generated .....	23
14	7.1.21.5.2.3 Effect on receipt .....	23
15	7.1.21.5.3 MLME-ADVERTISE.confirm .....	23
16	7.1.21.5.3.1 Semantics .....	23
17	7.1.21.5.3.2 When generated .....	24
18	7.1.21.5.3.3 Effect on receipt .....	24
19	7.1.21.6 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE .....	24
20	7.1.21.6.1 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request .....	24
21	7.1.21.6.1.1 Semantics .....	24
22	7.1.21.6.1.2 When generated .....	24
23	7.1.21.6.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	24
24	7.1.21.6.2 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm .....	25
25	7.1.21.6.2.1 Semantics .....	25
26	7.1.21.6.2.2 When generated .....	25
27	7.1.21.6.2.3 Effect on receipt .....	25
28	7.1.21.7 MLME-JOIN .....	25
29	7.1.21.7.1 MLME-JOIN.request .....	25
30	7.1.21.7.1.1 Semantics .....	25
31	7.1.21.7.1.2 When generated .....	26
32	7.1.21.7.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	26
33	7.1.21.7.2 MLME-JOIN.indication .....	26
34	7.1.21.7.2.1 Semantics .....	26
35	7.1.21.7.2.2 When generated .....	27
36	7.1.21.7.2.3 Effect on receipt .....	27
37	7.1.21.7.3 MLME-JOIN.confirm .....	27
38	7.1.21.7.3.1 Semantics .....	27
39	7.1.21.7.3.2 When generated .....	27
40	7.1.21.7.3.3 Effect on receipt .....	27
41	7.1.21.8 MLME-ACTIVATE .....	28
42	7.1.21.8.1 MLME-ACTIVATE.request .....	28
43	7.1.21.8.1.1 Semantics .....	28
44	7.1.21.8.1.2 When generated .....	28
45	7.1.21.8.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	28
46	7.1.21.8.2 MLME-ACTIVATE.indication .....	29
47	7.1.21.8.2.1 Semantics .....	29
48	7.1.21.8.2.2 When generated .....	29
49	7.1.21.8.2.3 Effect on receipt .....	29
50	7.1.21.8.3 MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm .....	29
51	7.1.21.8.3.1 Semantics .....	29
52	7.1.21.8.3.2 When generated .....	30
53	7.1.21.8.3.3 Effect on receipt .....	30
54	7.1.21.9 MLME-DISCONNECT .....	30
55	7.1.21.9.1 MLME-DISCONNECT.request .....	30
56	7.1.21.9.1.1 Semantics .....	30
57	7.1.21.9.1.2 When generated .....	30
58	7.1.21.9.1.3 Effect on receipt .....	30
59	7.1.21.9.2 MLME-DISCONNECT.indication .....	30
60	7.1.21.9.2.1 Semantics .....	30
61	7.1.21.9.2.2 When generated .....	31
62	7.1.21.9.2.3 Effect on receipt .....	31
63	7.1.21.9.3 MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm .....	31

1	7.1.21.9.3.1 Semantics .....	31
2	7.1.21.9.3.2 When generated .....	31
3	7.1.21.9.3.3 Effect on receipt .....	31
4	7.1.22 LL-specific MAC sublayer service specification .....	31
5	7.1.22.1 Primitives for Superframe Configuration of low latency networks .....	32
6	7.1.22.1.1 General .....	32
7	7.1.22.1.2 MLME-LL_NW.discovery .....	32
8	7.1.22.1.2.1 General .....	32
9	7.1.22.1.2.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive .....	32
10	7.1.22.1.2.3 When generated .....	32
11	7.1.22.1.2.4 Appropriate usage .....	32
12	7.1.22.1.3 MLME-LL_NW.discovery_confirm .....	32
13	7.1.22.1.3.1 General .....	32
14	7.1.22.1.3.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive .....	32
15	7.1.22.1.3.3 When generated .....	32
16	7.1.22.1.3.4 Appropriate usage .....	33
17	7.1.22.1.4 MLME-LL_NW.configuration .....	33
18	7.1.22.1.4.1 General .....	33
19	7.1.22.1.4.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive .....	33
20	7.1.22.1.4.3 When generated .....	33
21	7.1.22.1.4.4 Appropriate usage .....	33
22	7.1.22.1.5 MLME-LL_NW.configuration_confirm .....	33
23	7.1.22.1.5.1 General .....	33
24	7.1.22.1.5.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive .....	33
25	7.1.22.1.5.3 When generated .....	34
26	7.1.22.1.5.4 Appropriate usage .....	34
27	7.1.22.1.6 MLME-LL_NW.online .....	34
28	7.1.22.1.6.1 General .....	34
29	7.1.22.1.6.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive .....	34
30	7.1.22.1.6.3 When generated .....	34
31	7.1.22.1.6.4 Appropriate usage .....	34
32	7.1.22.1.7 MLME-LL_NW.online_indication .....	34
33	7.1.22.1.7.1 General .....	34
34	7.1.22.1.7.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive .....	34
35	7.1.22.1.7.3 When generated .....	34
36	7.1.22.1.7.4 Appropriate usage .....	34
37	7.1.23 CM-specific MAC sublayer service specification .....	35
38	7.1.23.1 MLME-EGTS .....	35
39	7.1.23.1.1 General .....	35
40	7.1.23.1.2 MLME-EGTS.request .....	35
41	7.1.23.1.2.1 General .....	35
42	7.1.23.1.2.2 Semantics .....	35
43	7.1.23.1.2.3 When generated .....	36
44	7.1.23.1.2.4 Effect on receipt .....	36
45	7.1.23.1.3 MLME-EGTS.confirm .....	38
46	7.1.23.1.3.1 General .....	38
47	7.1.23.1.3.2 Semantics .....	38
48	7.1.23.1.3.3 When generated .....	39
49	7.1.23.1.3.4 Effect on receipt .....	39
50	7.1.23.1.4 MLME-EGTS.indication .....	39
51	7.1.23.1.4.1 General .....	39
52	7.1.23.1.4.2 Semantics .....	39
53	7.1.23.1.4.3 When generated .....	40
54	7.1.23.1.4.4 Effect on receipt .....	40
55	7.1.23.1.5 EGTS management message sequence charts .....	40
56	7.1.23.2 MLME-CM-START .....	41
57	7.1.23.2.1 General .....	41
58	7.1.23.2.2 MLME-CM-START.request .....	41
59	7.1.23.2.2.1 General .....	41
60	7.1.23.2.2.2 Semantics .....	41
61	7.1.23.2.2.3 Appropriate usage .....	44
62	7.1.23.2.2.4 Effect on receipt .....	44
63	7.1.23.3 MAC CM-data service .....	44

1	7.1.23.3.1 General .....	44
2	7.1.23.3.2 MCPS-CM-DATA.request .....	44
3	7.1.23.3.2.1 Appropriate usage .....	44
4	7.1.23.3.2.2 Effect on receipt .....	45
5	7.1.23.4 MLME-EGTSinfo .....	45
6	7.1.23.4.1 CM-Primitives for requesting EGTS information .....	45
7	7.1.23.4.2 MLME-EGTSinfo.request .....	45
8	7.1.23.4.2.1 General .....	45
9	7.1.23.4.2.2 Semantics .....	45
10	7.1.23.4.2.3 Appropriate usage .....	46
11	7.1.23.4.2.4 Effect on receipt .....	46
12	7.1.23.4.3 MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm .....	47
13	7.1.23.4.3.1 General .....	47
14	7.1.23.4.3.2 Semantics .....	47
15	7.1.23.4.3.3 When generated .....	47
16	7.1.23.4.3.4 Appropriate usage .....	47
17	7.1.23.4.4 EGTS information sequence chart .....	48
18	7.1.23.5 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT .....	48
19	7.1.23.5.1.1 General .....	48
20	7.1.23.5.2 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request .....	48
21	7.1.23.5.2.1 General .....	48
22	7.1.23.5.2.2 Semantics .....	48
23	7.1.23.5.2.3 Appropriate usage .....	49
24	7.1.23.5.2.4 Effect on receipt .....	49
25	7.1.23.5.3 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm .....	49
26	7.1.23.5.3.1 General .....	49
27	7.1.23.5.3.2 Semantics .....	49
28	7.1.23.5.3.3 When generated .....	50
29	7.1.23.5.3.4 Effect on receipt .....	50
30	7.1.23.5.4 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication .....	50
31	7.1.23.5.4.1 General .....	50
32	7.1.23.5.4.2 Semantics .....	50
33	7.1.23.5.4.3 When generated .....	50
34	7.1.23.5.4.4 Effect on receipt .....	51
35	7.1.23.5.5 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT message sequence charts .....	51
36	7.1.23.6 CM-Beacon notification primitive .....	51
37	7.1.23.6.1 General .....	51
38	7.1.23.6.2 MLME-CM-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication .....	51
39	7.1.23.7 CM-Primitives for channel scanning .....	52
40	7.1.23.7.1 General .....	52
41	7.1.23.7.2 MLME-CM-SCAN.request .....	52
42	7.1.23.7.2.1 General .....	52
43	7.1.23.7.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive .....	52
44	7.1.23.7.2.3 Appropriate usage .....	52
45	7.1.23.7.2.4 Effect on receipt .....	52
46	7.1.23.7.3 MLME-CM-SCAN.confirm .....	53
47	7.1.23.7.3.1 General .....	53
48	7.1.23.7.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive .....	53
49	7.1.24 LE-specific MAC sublayer service specification .....	54
50	7.1.24.1 General .....	54
51	7.1.24.2 MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication .....	54
52	7.1.24.2.1 General .....	54
53	7.1.24.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive .....	54
54	7.1.24.2.3 When generated .....	54
55	7.1.24.2.4 Appropriate usage .....	54
56	7.2 MAC frame formats .....	54
57	7.2.1 General MAC frame format .....	54
58	7.2.1.1 Frame Control field .....	55
59	7.2.1.1.1 Frame Type subfield .....	55
60	7.2.2 Format of individual frame types .....	55
61	7.2.2.1 Beacon frame format .....	55
62	7.2.3 Frame compatibility .....	55
63	7.2.4 PA-Frame Formats .....	55

1	7.2.5 LL-Frame Formats .....	58
2	7.2.5.1 General MAC Frame Format with MHR of 1 octet .....	58
3	7.2.5.1.1 General .....	58
4	7.2.5.1.2 Shortened Frame Control field .....	58
5	7.2.5.1.2.1 General .....	58
6	7.2.5.1.2.2 Frame Type subfield .....	59
7	7.2.5.1.2.3 Security Enabled subfield .....	59
8	7.2.5.1.2.4 Frame Version subfield .....	59
9	7.2.5.1.2.5 ACK Request subfield .....	59
10	7.2.5.1.2.6 Sub Frame Type subfield .....	59
11	7.2.5.1.3 Frame Payload field .....	59
12	7.2.5.1.4 FCS field .....	60
13	7.2.5.2 Format of individual frame types with MHR of 1 octet .....	60
14	7.2.5.2.1 General .....	60
15	7.2.5.2.2 Beacon frame format .....	60
16	7.2.5.2.2.1 General .....	60
17	7.2.5.2.2.2 Beacon frame MHR fields .....	60
18	7.2.5.2.2.3 Flags / Beacon Payload in online mode .....	60
19	7.2.5.2.2.4 Flags / Beacon payload for discovery and configuration mode .....	62
20	7.2.5.2.3 Data frame format .....	62
21	7.2.5.2.3.1 General .....	62
22	7.2.5.2.3.2 Data frame MHR fields .....	62
23	7.2.5.2.3.3 Data Payload field .....	62
24	7.2.5.2.4 Acknowledgement frame format .....	63
25	7.2.5.2.4.1 General .....	63
26	7.2.5.2.4.2 Acknowledgement frame MHR fields .....	63
27	7.2.5.2.4.3 Acknowledgement Type field .....	63
28	7.2.5.2.4.4 Acknowledgement Payload field .....	63
29	7.2.5.2.4.5 Data Group ACK (GACK) .....	63
30	7.2.5.2.5 MAC Command frame format .....	64
31	7.2.5.2.5.1 General .....	64
32	7.2.5.2.5.2 MAC command frame MHR fields .....	64
33	7.2.5.2.5.3 Command Payload field .....	65
34	7.2.6 CM-Frame Formats .....	65
35	7.2.6.1 General MAC frame format .....	65
36	7.2.6.2 Format of individual frame types .....	65
37	7.2.6.2.1 General .....	65
38	7.2.6.2.2 Beacon frame format .....	65
39	7.2.6.2.2.1 General .....	65
40	7.2.6.2.2.2 Beacon frame MHR fields .....	65
41	7.2.6.2.2.3 Superframe Specification field .....	65
42	7.2.6.2.2.4 GTS Specification field .....	66
43	7.2.6.2.2.5 GTS Directions field .....	66
44	7.2.6.2.2.6 GTS List field .....	66
45	7.2.6.2.2.7 Pending Address Specification field .....	66
46	7.2.6.2.2.8 Address List field .....	66
47	7.2.6.2.2.9 Beacon Payload field .....	66
48	7.2.6.2.2.10 EGTS Superframe Specification field .....	66
49	7.2.6.2.2.11 Channel Hopping Specification field .....	67
50	7.2.6.2.2.12 Time Synchronization Specification field .....	67
51	7.2.6.2.2.13 Beacon Bitmap field .....	68
52	7.2.6.2.3 Data frame format .....	68
53	7.2.6.2.4 Acknowledgment frame format .....	68
54	7.2.6.2.5 MAC command frame format .....	68
55	7.3 MAC command frames .....	68
56	7.3.1 Association request command .....	68
57	7.3.2 Association response command .....	70
58	7.3.2.1 MHR fields .....	70
59	7.3.2.2 Short Address field .....	70
60	7.3.2.3 Association Status field .....	70
61	7.3.3 .....	70
62	7.3.4 .....	70
63	7.3.5 .....	70

1	7.3.6	70
2	7.3.7	70
3	7.3.8 Coordinator realignment command	70
4	7.3.9 GTS request command	70
5	7.3.10 PA-commands	70
6	7.3.10.1 Advertisement command	70
7	7.3.10.1.1 General	70
8	7.3.10.1.2 MHR field	71
9	7.3.10.1.3 Command Frame Identifier field	71
10	7.3.10.1.4 Timing Information field	71
11	7.3.10.1.5 Security Control field	71
12	7.3.10.1.6 Join Control field	71
13	7.3.10.1.7 Timeslot Template and Hopping Sequence ID field	71
14	7.3.10.1.8 Channel Page/Map Length field	72
15	7.3.10.1.9 Channel Page field	72
16	7.3.10.1.10 Channel Map field	72
17	7.3.10.1.11 Number of Slotframes field	72
18	7.3.10.1.12 Slotframe Information and Links (for each slotframe) field	72
19	7.3.10.1.13 General	72
20	7.3.10.1.14 Slotframe ID subfield	72
21	7.3.10.1.15 Slotframe Size subfield	72
22	7.3.10.1.16 Number of Links subfield	72
23	7.3.10.1.17 Link Information (for each link) subfield	73
24	7.3.10.1.18 Timeslot subfield	73
25	7.3.10.1.19 Channel Offset Information subfield	73
26	7.3.10.1.20 Link Option subfield	73
27	7.3.10.1.21 MIC	73
28	7.3.10.2 Join command	73
29	7.3.10.2.1 General	73
30	7.3.10.2.2 MHR fields	74
31	7.3.10.2.3 Command Frame Identifier field	74
32	7.3.10.2.4 Capability Information field	74
33	7.3.10.2.5 Clock Accuracy Capability field	74
34	7.3.10.2.6 Join Security Information field	74
35	7.3.10.2.7 Number of Neighbor field	74
36	7.3.10.2.8 Neighbor field	74
37	7.3.10.2.9 MIC	75
38	7.3.10.3 Activate command	75
39	7.3.10.3.1 General	75
40	7.3.10.3.2 MHR	75
41	7.3.10.3.3 Command Frame Identifier field	75
42	7.3.10.3.4 Short Address field	76
43	7.3.10.3.5 Number of Links field	76
44	7.3.10.3.6 Link field	76
45	7.3.10.3.7 Activate Security Information field	76
46	7.3.10.3.8 MIC	76
47	7.3.11 LL-commands	76
48	7.3.11.1 Discover Response command	76
49	7.3.11.1.1 General	76
50	7.3.11.1.2 7.3.10.1 MHR fields	77
51	7.3.11.1.2.1 General	77
52	7.3.11.1.2.2 Using MAC command frames	77
53	7.3.11.1.2.3 Using MAC command frames with shortened frame control	77
54	7.3.11.1.3 7.3.10.2 Command Frame Identifier field	77
55	7.3.11.1.4 7.3.10.3 Discovery Parameters field	77
56	7.3.11.2 Configuration Response Frame	77
57	7.3.11.2.1 General	77
58	7.3.11.2.2 MHR fields	78
59	7.3.11.2.3 7.3.11.1.1 Using MAC command frames	78
60	7.3.11.2.3.1 General	78
61	7.3.11.2.3.2 Using MAC command frames with shortened frame control	78
62	7.3.11.2.4 Command Frame Identifier field	78
63	7.3.11.2.5 Configuration Parameters field	78

1	7.3.11.3 Configuration Request Frame .....	79
2	7.3.11.3.1 General .....	79
3	7.3.11.3.2 MHR fields .....	79
4	7.3.11.3.2.1 General .....	79
5	7.3.11.3.2.2 Using MAC command frames .....	79
6	7.3.11.3.2.3 Using MAC command frames with shortened frame control .....	79
7	7.3.11.3.3 Command Frame Identifier field .....	79
8	7.3.11.3.4 Configuration Parameters field .....	80
9	7.3.11.4 Clear to Send (CTS) Shared Group Frame .....	80
10	7.3.11.4.1 General .....	80
11	7.3.11.4.2 MHR fields .....	80
12	7.3.11.4.3 Command Frame Identifier field .....	80
13	7.3.11.4.4 Network ID field .....	80
14	7.3.11.5 Request to Send (RTS) Frame .....	81
15	7.3.11.5.1 General .....	81
16	7.3.11.5.2 MHR fields .....	81
17	7.3.11.5.3 Command Frame Identifier field .....	81
18	7.3.11.5.4 Short Originator Address .....	81
19	7.3.11.5.5 Network ID field .....	81
20	7.3.11.6 Clear to Send (CTS) Frame .....	81
21	7.3.11.6.1 General .....	81
22	7.3.11.6.2 MHR fields .....	82
23	7.3.11.6.3 Command Frame Identifier field .....	82
24	7.3.11.6.4 Short Destination Address .....	82
25	7.3.11.6.5 Network ID field .....	82
26	7.3.12 CM-commands .....	82
27	7.3.12.1 General .....	82
28	7.3.12.2 CM-Association request command .....	82
29	7.3.12.2.1 General .....	82
30	7.3.12.2.2 MHR fields .....	83
31	7.3.12.2.3 Capability Information field .....	83
32	7.3.12.2.4 Channel Offset field .....	83
33	7.3.12.3 CM-Association respond command .....	83
34	7.3.12.3.1 General .....	83
35	7.3.12.3.2 MHR fields .....	83
36	7.3.12.3.3 Short Address field .....	83
37	7.3.12.3.4 Association Status field .....	83
38	7.3.12.3.5 Channel Hopping Sequence Length field .....	84
39	7.3.12.3.6 Channel Hopping Sequence field .....	84
40	7.3.12.4 EGTS handshake command .....	84
41	7.3.12.4.1 General .....	84
42	7.3.12.4.2 CM-MHR fields .....	84
43	7.3.12.4.3 EGTS Characteristics fields .....	84
44	7.3.12.4.4 EGTS Descriptor field .....	85
45	7.3.12.4.5 EGTS ABT Specification field .....	86
46	7.3.12.5 EGTS information request command .....	87
47	7.3.12.6 EGTS information reply command .....	87
48	7.3.12.7 Beacon allocation notification command .....	88
49	7.3.12.8 Beacon collision notification command .....	88
50	7.3.12.9 Link status report command .....	89
51	7.3.12.9.1 General .....	89
52	7.3.12.9.2 MHR fields .....	89
53	7.3.12.9.3 Link Status Descriptor Count field .....	89
54	7.3.12.9.4 Link Status List fields .....	90
55	7.3.12.10 Multi-channel beacon request command .....	90
56	7.3.12.11 Multi-channel hello command .....	90
57	7.3.12.11.1 General .....	90
58	7.3.12.11.2 MHR fields .....	91
59	7.3.12.11.3 Hello Specification field .....	91
60	7.3.12.11.4 Multi-channel hello reply command .....	91
61	7.3.12.12 Channel probe command .....	91
62	7.3.12.12.1 General .....	91
63	7.3.12.12.2 MHR fields .....	92



1	7.3.12.12.3 Channel Probe Specification field .....	92
2	7.3.13 SUN-commands .....	92
3	7.3.13.1 SUN-Enhanced Beacon request command .....	92
4	7.3.13.1.1 General .....	92
5	7.3.13.1.2 Request Field .....	93
6	7.3.13.1.2.1 General .....	93
7	7.3.13.1.2.2 Permit Joining On .....	93
8	7.3.13.1.2.3 LinkQuality Level .....	93
9	7.3.13.1.2.4 Percent filter .....	94
10	7.3.13.1.2.5 Extended Payload .....	94
11	7.3.14 LE-commands .....	94
12	7.3.14.1 Wakeup Frame .....	94
13	7.3.14.2 New optional MHR field .....	94
14	7.3.14.3 Secure Acknowledgement Frame .....	95
15	7.3.14.4 RIT data request command .....	95
16	7.3.14.4.1 General .....	95
17	7.3.14.4.2 MHR fields .....	96
18	7.4 MAC constants and PIB attributes .....	96
19	7.4.1 MAC constants .....	96
20	7.4.2 MAC PIB attributes .....	96
21	7.4.2.1 General .....	96
22	7.4.2.2 PA-specific MAC PIB attributes .....	96
23	7.4.2.2.1 General .....	96
24	7.4.2.2.2 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macSlotframeTable .....	96
25	7.4.2.2.3 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macLinkTable .....	97
26	7.4.2.2.4 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macTimeslotTemplate .....	97
27	7.4.2.2.5 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macHoppingSequence .....	98
28	7.4.2.3 LL-specific MAC PIB attributes .....	98
29	7.4.2.4 CM-specific MAC PIB attributes .....	99
30	7.4.2.5 LE-specific MAC PIB attributes .....	99
31	7.5 MAC functional description .....	100
32	7.5.1 Channel access .....	100
33	7.5.1.1 Superframe structure .....	100
34	7.5.1.1.1 .....	100
35	7.5.1.1.2 .....	100
36	7.5.1.2 .....	100
37	7.5.1.3 .....	100
38	7.5.1.4 CSMA-CA algorithm .....	100
39	7.5.1.4.1 General .....	100
40	7.5.1.4.2 PA-CCA Algorithm .....	101
41	7.5.1.4.3 PA-CA Algorithm .....	101
42	7.5.1.4.4 LL-Simplified CSMA-CA .....	102
43	7.5.1.5 PA-Slotframe structure .....	103
44	7.5.1.5.1 General .....	103
45	7.5.1.5.2 Multiple slotframes .....	103
46	7.5.1.6 LL-Superframe structure .....	104
47	7.5.1.6.1 General Structure of Superframe .....	104
48	7.5.1.6.2 Beacon Time Slot .....	105
49	7.5.1.6.3 Management Time Slots .....	105
50	7.5.1.6.4 Sensor Time Slots .....	105
51	7.5.1.6.5 Actuator Time Slots .....	105
52	7.5.1.6.6 Channel access within time slots .....	105
53	7.5.1.7 LE-Functional description .....	106
54	7.5.1.7.1 LE-Contention access period (CAP) .....	106
55	7.5.1.7.2 LE-Scanning through channels .....	106
56	7.5.2 Starting and maintaining PANs .....	106
57	7.5.2.1 .....	106
58	7.5.2.2 .....	106
59	7.5.2.3 .....	106
60	7.5.2.4 .....	106
61	7.5.2.5 Device discovery .....	106
62	7.5.2.6 PA-network formation .....	106
63	7.5.2.6.1 Overview .....	106

1	7.5.2.6.2 Advertising .....	108
2	7.5.2.6.3 Joining .....	108
3	7.5.3 Association and disassociation .....	109
4	7.5.4 Synchronization .....	109
5	7.5.4.1 Synchronization with beacons .....	109
6	7.5.4.2 .....	109
7	7.5.4.3 .....	109
8	7.5.4.4 Synchronization in PA-network .....	109
9	7.5.4.4.1 Timeslot communication .....	109
10	7.5.4.4.2 Node synchronization .....	110
11	7.5.4.4.2.1 General .....	110
12	7.5.4.4.2.2 Acknowledgement-based synchronization .....	111
13	7.5.4.4.2.3 Frame-based synchronization .....	111
14	7.5.4.4.2.4 Network time synchronization .....	112
15	7.5.4.4.2.5 Keep-Alive mechanism .....	112
16	7.5.5 Transaction handling .....	112
17	7.5.6 .....	112
18	7.5.6.1 .....	112
19	7.5.6.2 Reception and rejection .....	112
20	7.5.6.3 .....	114
21	7.5.6.4 .....	114
22	7.5.6.4.1 .....	114
23	7.5.6.4.2 Acknowledgment .....	114
24	7.5.6.4.3 Retransmissions .....	114
25	7.5.6.4.3.1 General .....	114
26	7.5.6.4.3.2 PA-Retransmissions .....	114
27	7.5.6.5 Promiscuous mode .....	115
28	7.5.7 GTS allocation and management .....	115
29	7.5.7.1 .....	115
30	7.5.7.2 .....	115
31	7.5.7.3 .....	115
32	7.5.7.4 .....	115
33	7.5.7.5 .....	115
34	7.5.7.6 GTS expiration .....	115
35	7.5.8 Ranging .....	115
36	7.5.9 LL-Transmission Modes in star networks using short MAC headers .....	115
37	7.5.9.1 General .....	115
38	7.5.9.2 Discovery Mode .....	115
39	7.5.9.3 Configuration Mode .....	116
40	7.5.9.4 Online Mode .....	117
41	7.5.10 CM-EGTS-based Multi-superframe Structure .....	119
42	7.5.10.1 EGTS-based Multi-superframe Structure Definition .....	119
43	7.5.10.2 Channel Hopping Mode .....	120
44	7.5.10.3 Group Ack .....	121
45	7.5.10.4 CAP Reduction .....	122
46	7.5.10.5 EGTS allocation and management .....	122
47	7.5.10.6 EGTS allocation .....	123
48	7.5.10.7 EGTS deallocation .....	125
49	7.5.10.8 EGTS reallocation .....	126
50	7.5.10.9 EGTS expiration .....	127
51	7.5.10.10 EGTS retrieve .....	128
52	7.5.10.11 EGTS change .....	128
53	7.5.10.12 Robust EGTS allocation .....	129
54	7.5.10.13 Beacon Scheduling .....	129
55	7.5.10.14 EGTS Synchronization .....	130
56	7.5.10.15 Passive channel scan .....	130
57	7.5.10.16 Updating superframe configuration and channel PIB attributes .....	131
58	7.5.10.17 Beacon generation .....	131
59	7.5.10.18 Coexistence of beacon-enabled and non-beacon-enabled mode .....	131
60	7.5.10.19 CM-Superframe structure .....	131
61	7.5.10.20 CM-Contention access period (CAP) .....	131
62	7.5.10.21 CM-Incoming and outgoing superframe timing .....	132
63	7.5.10.22 Multi-Channel adaptation .....	132

1	7.5.10.22.1 General .....	132
2	7.5.10.22.2 Receiver-based communication .....	132
3	7.5.10.23 Asymmetric multi-channel active scan .....	133
4	7.5.10.24 Multi-Channel Hello .....	133
5	7.5.10.25 Three-way Handshake Channel Probe .....	133
6	7.5.11 LE-Transmission, reception and acknowledgement .....	134
7	7.5.11.1.1 Coordinated Sampled Listening (CSL) .....	134
8	7.5.11.1.1.1 General .....	134
9	7.5.11.1.1.2 CSL idle listening .....	134
10	7.5.11.1.1.3 CSL transmission .....	134
11	7.5.11.1.1.4 Unicast transmission .....	134
12	7.5.11.1.1.5 Multicast transmission .....	135
13	7.5.11.1.1.6 Utilizing the optional CSL sync field .....	135
14	7.5.11.1.1.7 CSL reception .....	135
15	7.5.11.1.1.8 CSL over multiple channels .....	135
16	7.5.11.1.1.9 Turning off CSL mode to reduce latency .....	136
17	7.5.11.1.2 Receiver Initiated Transmission (RIT) .....	136
18	7.5.6.8.1 Periodical RIT data request transmission and reception .....	136
19	7.5.11.1.3 Data transmission in RIT mode .....	137
20	7.5.11.1.4 Multicast transmission .....	138
21	7.6 Security suite specifications .....	138
22	7.7 Message sequence charts illustrating MAC-PHY interaction .....	138
23	Annex L (informative) Bibliography .....	139
24	L.1 Documents for MAC enhancements in support of LL-applications .....	139
25	Annex M (informative) Requirements of industrial and other application domains .....	140
26	M.1 General .....	140
27	M.2 Process automation (PA) .....	141
28	M.3 Low latency networks (LL) .....	141
29	M.3.1 .....	Typical application domains for LL-networks 141
30	M.3.2 .....	Application overview 142
31	M.3.3 .....	Requirements and Assumptions 143
32	M.4 Commercial (CM) .....	143
33	M.5 Low energy (LE) .....	144
34	M.6 Channel Diversity .....	144
35		
36	T_o_T “”	
37	Table 41.a—MCPS-DATA.request parameters .....	10
38	Table 78.a—MCPS-DATA.confirm parameters .....	11
39	Table 82.a—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP for PA .....	12
40	Table 82.b—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP for LL .....	12
41	Table 82.c—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP for CM .....	13
42	Table 120.a—MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request parameters .....	14
43	Table 120.b—MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm parameters .....	15
44	Table 120.c—MLME-SET-LINK.request parameters .....	16
45	Table 120.d—MLME-SET-LINK.confirm parameters .....	18
46	Table 120.e—MLME-PA-MODE.request parameters .....	18
47	Table 120.f—MLME-PA-MODE.confirm parameters .....	19
48	Table 120.g—MLME-LISTEN.request parameters .....	20
49	Table 120.h—MLME-LISTEN.request pageChannelDesc parameters .....	20
50	Table 120.i—MLME-LISTEN.confirm parameters .....	21
51	Table 120.j—MLME-ADVERTISE.request parameters .....	22
52	Table 120.k—MLME-ADVERTISE.request Slotframe parameters (per slotframe) .....	22
53	Table 120.l—MLME-ADVERTISE.indication parameters .....	23
54	Table 120.m—MLME-ADVERTISE.confirm parameters .....	24
55	Table 120.n—MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request parameters .....	24
56	Table 120.o—MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm parameters .....	25
57	Table 120.p—MLME-JOIN.request parameters .....	25
58	Table 120.q—MLME-JOIN.request securityInformation parameters .....	26
59	Table 120.r—MLME-JOIN.request neighbors parameters .....	26

1	Table 120.s—MLME-JOIN.indication parameters.....	27
2	Table 120.t—MLME-JOIN.confirm parameters .....	27
3	Table 120.u—MLME-ACTIVATE.request parameters .....	28
4	Table 120.v—MLME-ACTIVATE.request securityInformation parameters.....	28
5	Table 120.w—MLME-ACTIVATE.request slotframe parameters (per slotframe).....	28
6	Table 120.x—MLME-ACTIVATE.request Link parameters (per link).....	28
7	Table 120.y—MLME-ACTIVATE.indication parameters.....	29
8	Table 120.z—MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm parameters.....	30
9	Table 120.aa—MLME-DISCONNECT.indication parameters .....	31
10	Table 120.bb—MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm parameters.....	31
11	Table 120.cc— MLME-EGTS.request parameters.....	36
12	Table 120.dd— MLME-EGTS.confirm parameters .....	39
13	Table 120.ee— MLME-EGTS.indication parameters .....	40
14	Table 120.ff—MLME-CM-START.request parameters.....	43
15	Table 120.gg—Elements of DCHDescriptor .....	43
16	Table 120.hh—MCPS-CM-SAP primitives.....	44
17	Table 120.ii—MCPS-CM-DATA.request parameter TxOptions .....	44
18	Table 120.jj—MLME-EGTSinfo.request parameters.....	46
19	Table 120.kk— MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm parameters.....	47
20	Table 120.ll—MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request parameters.....	49
21	Table 120.mm— MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm parameters.....	50
22	Table 120.nn—MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication parameters.....	50
23	Table 120.oo—Additional elements of CM-PANDescriptor.....	52
24	Table 120.pp—Additional elements of MLME-CM-SCAN.request parameters.....	52
25	Table 120.qq—Additional element of MLME-CM-SCAN.confirm parameters .....	53
26	Table 120.rr— MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication parameters .....	54
27	Table 122.a—Values of Frame Subtype subfield .....	59
28	Table 122.b—Transmission Mode settings.....	61
29	Table 122.c—Acknowledgement Types.....	63
30	Table 125.a—Values of the Channel Diversity Mode subfield .....	85
31	Table 125.b—Values of the EGTS Characteristics Type subfield.....	85
32	Table 125.c—Values of the EGTS Handshake Type subfield.....	85
33	Table 125.d—Values of the Channel Probe Subtype subfield.....	92
34	Table 125.e—Request field coding.....	93
35	Table 127.a—PA-specific MAC PIB attributes.....	96
36	Table 127.b—PA-MAC PIB attributes for macSlotframeTable.....	97
37	Table 127.c— PA-MAC PIB attributes for macLinkTable .....	97
38	Table 127.d—PA-MAC PIB attributes for macTimeslotTemplate.....	98
39	Table 127.e— PA-MAC PIB attributes for macHoppingSequence.....	98
40	Table 127.f—LL-specific MAC PIB attributes.....	99
41	Table 127.g—CM-specific MAC PIB attributes.....	99
42	Table 127.h—LE-specific MAC PIB attributes.....	100
43	Table 127.i—Default values for MAC PIB attributes for slotted CSMA-CA in LL-Networks.....	102
44	Table 127.j—Time attributes of time slots .....	106
45		
46	T_o_Fig “FigAmd”	
47	Figure 1.a—Star topology LL-MAC.....	4
48	Figure 1.b—Superframe with dedicated time slots.....	5
49	Figure 1.c—Usage and order of slots in a superframe.....	5
50	Figure 1.d—Usage and order of slots in a superframe with configured use of separate GACK.....	6
51	Figure 6.a—Communication to a gateway in a low latency network .....	7
52	Figure 8.a—Communication from a gateway to an actuator in a low latency network .....	7
53	Figure 79.a—Message sequence chart for EGTS allocation initiated by a Source device.....	41
54	Figure 79.b—Message sequence chart for EGTS allocation initiated by a Destination device.....	41
55	Figure 79.c—Message sequence chart for EGTS information request .....	48
56	Figure 79.d—Message sequence chart for link status report .....	51
57	Figure 79.e—Message sequence chart for EGTS allocation initiated by a Destination device .....	51
58	Figure 92.a—Typical acknowledgement frame layout .....	56
59	Figure 92.b—Acknowledgement frame MHR.....	56
60	Figure 92.c—Acknowledgement frame DHR.....	57
61	Figure 92.d—DHR ACK/NACK frame control .....	57
62	Figure 92.e—General MAC frame format with shortened frame control field.....	58

1	Figure 92.f—Format of the Shortened Frame Control field .....	59
2	Figure 92.g—Format of the Shortened Beacon Frame .....	60
3	Figure 92.h—Beacon payload in online mode .....	61
4	Figure 92.i—Structure of Flags field of Beacons with 1-octet MAC-Header in online mode .....	61
5	Figure 92.j—Structure of Group Acknowledgement bitmap .....	61
6	Figure 92.k—Beacon payload in discovery / configuration mode .....	62
7	Figure 92.l—Format of Data Frame with Shortened Frame Control Field .....	62
8	Figure 92.m—Format of the Shortened Acknowledgement Frame .....	63
9	Figure 92.n—Format of the GACK Frame .....	64
10	Figure 92.o—Format of the shortened Command frames .....	64
11	Figure 92.p—Beacon frame format .....	65
12	Figure 92.q—Format of the EGTS Superframe Specification field .....	66
13	Figure 92.r—Format of the ChannelHoppingSpecification field .....	67
14	Figure 92.s—Format of the Time Synchronization Specification field .....	67
15	Figure 92.t—Format of the Beacon Bitmap field .....	68
16	Figure 103.a—Advertisement command format .....	70
17	Figure 103.b—Security Control field .....	71
18	Figure 103.c—Join Control field .....	71
19	Figure 103.d—Timeslot Template and Hopping Sequence ID field .....	72
20	Figure 103.e—Slotframe and Links field .....	72
21	Figure 103.f—Link Information field .....	73
22	Figure 103.g—Join command format .....	73
23	Figure 103.h—Clock Accuracy Capability .....	74
24	Figure 103.i—Neighbor .....	75
25	Figure 103.j—Activate command format .....	75
26	Figure 103.k—Discover response command MAC payload .....	76
27	Figure 103.l—Configuration response command MAC payload .....	78
28	Figure 103.m—Configuration request command MAC payload .....	79
29	Figure 103.n—Clear to send shared group command MAC payload .....	80
30	Figure 103.o—Request to send command MAC payload .....	81
31	Figure 103.p—Clear to send command MAC payload .....	82
32	Figure 103.q—Association request command format .....	83
33	Figure 103.r—CM-Capability Information field format .....	83
34	Figure 103.s—CM-Association response command format .....	83
35	Figure 103.t—EGTS handshake command format .....	84
36	Figure 103.u—EGTS Characteristics field format .....	84
37	Figure 103.v—Format of the EGTS Descriptor field .....	85
38	Figure 103.w—Format of the EGTS ABT Specification field .....	86
39	Figure 103.x—ABT Sub-block .....	86
40	Figure 103.y—TAB Sub-block .....	87
41	Figure 103.z—EGTS information request command format .....	87
42	Figure 103.aa—EGTS information reply command format .....	87
43	Figure 103.bb—Beacon allocation notification command format .....	88
44	Figure 103.cc—Beacon collision notification command format .....	88
45	Figure 103.dd—Link status report command format .....	89
46	Figure 103.ee—Link status specification field format .....	89
47	Figure 103.ff—Link status Descriptor format .....	90
48	Figure 103.gg—Multi-channel beacon request command format .....	90
49	Figure 103.hh—Multi-channel hello command format .....	91
50	Figure 103.ii—Hello specification field format .....	91
51	Figure 103.jj—Channel probe command format .....	92
52	Figure 103.kk—Channel Probe specification format .....	92
53	Figure 103.ll—SUN-Enhanced Beacon request command .....	93
54	Figure 103.mm—Format of wakeup frame command .....	94
55	Figure 103.nn—Format of optional MHR field .....	95
56	Figure 103.oo—Format of secure acknowledgement frame .....	95
57	Figure 103.pp—Format of RIT data request command .....	95
58	Figure 107.a—PA-CSMA-CA Algorithm .....	101
59	Figure 107.b—Example of a three-timeslot slotframe .....	103
60	Figure 107.c—Multiple slotframes in the network .....	103
61	Figure 107.d—Superframe with dedicated time slots .....	104
62	Figure 107.e—Usage and order of slots in a superframe .....	104
63	Figure 107.f—Time attributes of time slots .....	105

1	Figure 107.g—Message sequence chart for PA- procedure to find an advertising device.....	107
2	Figure 107.h—Message sequence chart for join and activate procedures .....	108
3	Figure 107.i—Timeslot diagram of acknowledged transmission.....	110
4	Figure 107.j—Time synchronization .....	111
5	Figure 107.k—Time propagation in PA-network .....	112
6	Figure 111.a—Transitions between transmission modes .....	115
7	Figure 111.b—Flow diagram of Discovery Mode .....	116
8	Figure 111.c—Flow diagram of configuration mode.....	117
9	Figure 111.d—Flow diagram of online mode for sensor devices .....	118
10	Figure 111.e—Flow diagram of online mode for actuator devices.....	119
11	Figure 111.f—EGTS-based multi-superframe structure .....	120
12	Figure 111.g—Channel usage of EGTS slots in EGTS-based multi-superframe structure.....	120
13	Figure 111.h—Details of EGTS Superframe with ECFP and GACK.....	121
14	Figure 111.i—GACK Frame Structure .....	122
15	Figure 111.j— CAP Reduction in EGTS-based Multi-superframe Structure .....	122
16	Figure 111.k— Three-way Handshake for EGTS Allocation .....	125
17	Figure 111.l— New node joining the network .....	130
18	Figure 111.m— Receiver-based communication.....	132
19	Figure 111.n— Basic CSL operations .....	134
20	Figure 111.o— Basic RIT operations .....	136
21	Figure 111.p— Message sequence chart for starting RIT mode .....	137
22	Figure 111.q— Message sequence chart for data transmission in RIT mode .....	138
23		

24

1 **Draft Standard for Information**  
2 **technology— Telecommunications and**  
3 **information exchange between**  
4 **systems— Local and metropolitan area**  
5 **networks— Specific requirements—**  
6 **Part 15.4: Wireless Medium Access**  
7 **Control (MAC) and Physical Layer**  
8 **(PHY) Specifications for Low-Rate**  
9 **Wireless Personal Area Networks**  
10 **(WPANs) Amendment 1: Add MAC**  
11 **enhancements for industrial**  
12 **applications and CWPAN**

13

14 NOTE—The editing instructions contained in this <amendment/corrigendum> define how to merge the material  
15 contained therein into the existing base standard and its amendments to form the comprehensive standard.

16 The editing instructions are shown in *bold italic*. Four editing instructions are used: change, delete, insert, and replace.  
17 *Change* is used to make corrections in existing text or tables. The editing instruction specifies the location of the change  
18 and describes what is being changed by using ~~strike through~~ (to remove old material) and underscore (to add new  
19 material). *Delete* removes existing material. *Insert* adds new material without disturbing the existing material. Insertions  
20 may require renumbering. If so, renumbering instructions are given in the editing instruction. *Replace* is used to make  
21 changes in figures or equations by removing the existing figure or equation and replacing it with a new one. Editorial  
22 notes will not be carried over into future editions because the changes will be incorporated into the base standard.

23

24 **1. Overview**

25

26 **2. Normative references**

27

### 1 3. Definitions

2 *Insert in alphabetical order the following definitions.*

3 **Coordinated Sampled Listening (CSL):** A low-energy mode to the MAC which allows receiving devices  
4 to periodically sample the channel(s) for incoming transmissions at low duty cycles. The receiving device  
5 and the transmitting device are coordinated to reduce transmit overhead.

6 **CSL Period:** The period in which receiving devices sample the channel(s) for incoming transmissions.

7 **CSL Phase:** The length of time between now and the next channel sample.

8 **CSL Payload Frame:** a beacon, data or command frame.

9 **CSL Wakeup Frame:** a special short frame transmitted back-to-back before the payload frame to ensure its  
10 reception by CSL receiving device.

11 **CSL Wakeup Frame Sequence:** a sequence of back-to-back wakeup frames up to the duration of the CSL  
12 Period.

13 **CSL Rendezvous Time (RZTime):** 2-octet timestamp in wakeup frame payload indicating the expected  
14 length of time in milliseconds between the end of the wakeup frame transmission and the beginning of the  
15 payload frame transmission.

16 **CSL Channel Sample:** The operation to perform ED on a channel and attempt to receive wakeup frame  
17 when energy is detected.

18 **low latency network (LL\_NW):** A PAN organized as star-network with a superframe structure and using  
19 frames with a MAC header of 1 octet length (frame type b100). The gateway of a low latency network  
20 indicates the existence of such a low latency network by periodically sending beacons with a MAC header of  
21 1 octet (frame type b100).

22 **Receiver Initiated Transmission (RIT):** An alternative low-energy mode to CSL in which receiving  
23 devices periodically broadcast data request frames and transmitting devices only transmit to a receiving  
24 device upon receiving a data request frame. RIT is suitable for the following application scenarios:

25 — Low data traffic rate and loose latency requirement (tens of seconds per transmission)

26 — Local regulations restricting the duration of continuous radio transmissions (e.g.,  
27 950MHZ band in Japan).

28

### 29 4. Acronyms and abbreviations

30 *Insert in alphabetical order the following acronyms.*

31

<b>CM</b>	<b>Commercial</b>
<b>FA</b>	<b>Factory automation</b>
<b>LL</b>	<b>Low latency</b>
<b>LL_NW</b>	<b>Low Latency Network</b>
<b>ND</b>	<b>Network device</b>
<b>PA</b>	<b>Process automation</b>
<b>RIT</b>	<b>Receiver Initiated Transmission</b>

32



## 1 **5. General description**

### 2 **5.1 Introduction**

3 *Insert before 5.2 the following text.*

4 In addition, several behaviors are amended for

5 — different industrial and other application domains and

6 — functional improvements.

7 The different industrial and other application domains have quite different requirements as they are often  
 8 also diametrical opposition to each other so that the resulting solutions cannot be the same (see Annex M).  
 9 That is the rational for specifying more than one solution because they are more than one problem to solve.  
 10 Those solutions are marked in the normative clauses with terms that are given in Annex M.

## 11 **5.2 Components of the IEEE 802.15.4 WPAN**

### 12 **5.3 Network topologies**

#### 13 **5.3.1 Star network formation**

#### 14 **5.3.2 Peer-to-peer network formation**

15 *Insert before 5.4 the following subclauses.*

#### 16 **5.3.3 LL-Star network for wireless low latency networks**

##### 17 **5.3.3.1 General**

18 Due to the stringent latency requirements of low latency applications, the star network becomes a topology  
 19 of choice with a superframe structure that supports low latency communication between the gateway device  
 20 and its sensor/actuator devices. Both to accelerate frame processing and to reduce transmission time, short  
 21 MAC frames with a 1-octet MAC header (shortened frame control) are deployed.

##### 22 **5.3.3.2 TDMA Access**

23 The PHY is accessed by a TDMA scheme, which is defined by a superframe of fixed length. The superframe  
 24 is synchronized with a beacon transmitted periodically from the gateway. Access within the superframe  
 25 is divided into time slots. The superframe can be configured to provide the full spectrum from complete  
 26 deterministic access to shared access. For deterministic access each device is assigned to a particular time  
 27 slot of fixed length. Shared Group timeslots allow multiple access for a group of nodes within a duration  
 28 enclosing an arbitrary number (up to the whole superframe) of dedicated time slots.

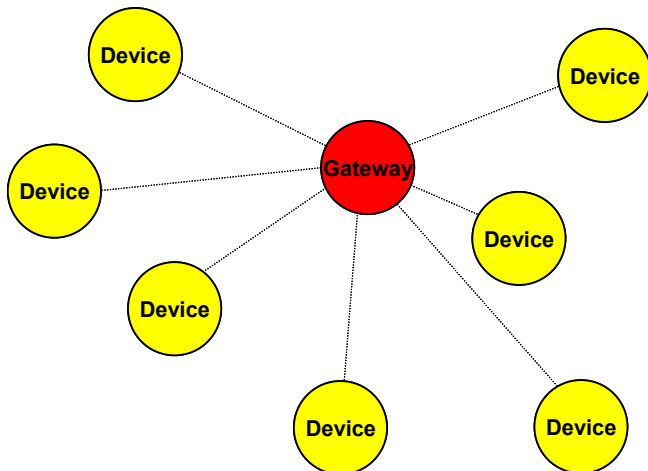
29 To ensure coexistence with other RF technologies in the 2.4GHz ISM band, no channel hopping is applied.

##### 30 **5.3.3.3 Addressing**

31 The LL-star network supports two addressing schemes. The first addressing mode is based on the time slot  
 32 assigned to a device for communication, i.e. the time slot corresponds exactly to a single device. The second  
 33 mode supports the short address format.

1 **5.3.3.4 Network Topology**

2 The LL sensor network requires a star topology (see Figure 1.a). Sensor/actuator devices are connected to a  
 3 single gateway. The sensors send the sensor-data unidirectionally to the gateway. Actuators are configured to  
 4 exchange data bidirectionally with the gateway.



5  
 6 **Figure 1.a—Star topology LL-MAC.**

7 The selection of channels and time slots for communication is planned in a network management instance.  
 8 The sensors and actuators are configured over the gateway based on planning information of the network  
 9 management instance.

10

11 **5.4 Architecture**

12 **5.5 Functional overview**

13 **5.5.1 Superframe structure**

14 *Insert after the heading of 5.5.1 the following subclause.*

15 **5.5.1.1 General**

16 *Insert after the first sentence of 5.5.1 the following paragraph and subclauses.*

17 There are different superframe structures possible:

- 18 — Superframe structure based on beacons of frame type Beacon as defined in 7.2.2.1. These beacons  
 19 have a long MAC header.
- 20 — Superframe structure based on beacons with a 1-octet MAC header as defined in 7.2.5.2.2. These  
 21 beacons have a short MAC header.

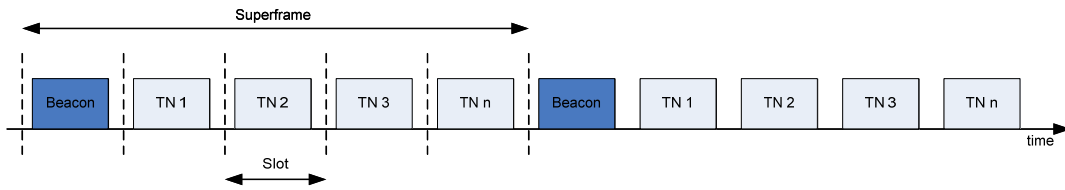
22 **5.5.1.2 Superframe structure based on Beacons**

23 *Insert before 5.5.2 the following subclause.*

1 **5.5.1.3 Superframe structure based on Beacons with 1-octet MAC header**

2 If *macFALowLatencePAN* is set to TRUE, the device is the gateway in a low latency network as described in  
 3 5.3.3.

4 The superframe is divided into a beacon slot and *macFAnumTimeSlots* number of time slots of equal length,  
 5 see Figure 1.b.

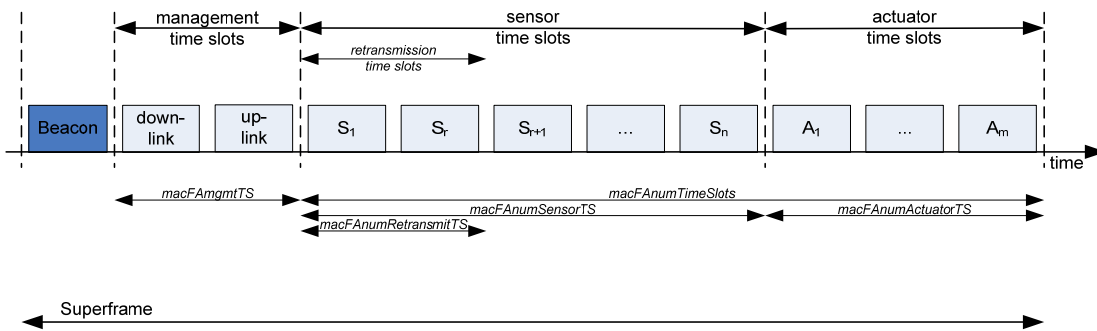


6  
 7 **Figure 1.b—Superframe with dedicated time slots.**

8  
 9 The first time slot of each superframe contains a beacon frame. The beacon frame is used for  
 10 synchronization with the superframe structure. It is also used for re-synchronization of devices that went into  
 11 power save or sleep mode.

12 The remaining time slots are assigned to the sensor and actuator devices in the network, so that there is no  
 13 explicit addressing necessary inside the frames provided that there is exactly one device assigned to a time  
 14 slot (see 7.5.1.6.6). The determination of the sender is achieved through the indexing of time slots. If there  
 15 are more than one device assigned to a time slot, the time slot is referred to as shared group time slot, and a  
 16 simple addressing scheme is used as described in 7.1.1.

17 As shown in Figure 1.c, there is a specific order in the meaning or usage of the time slots.

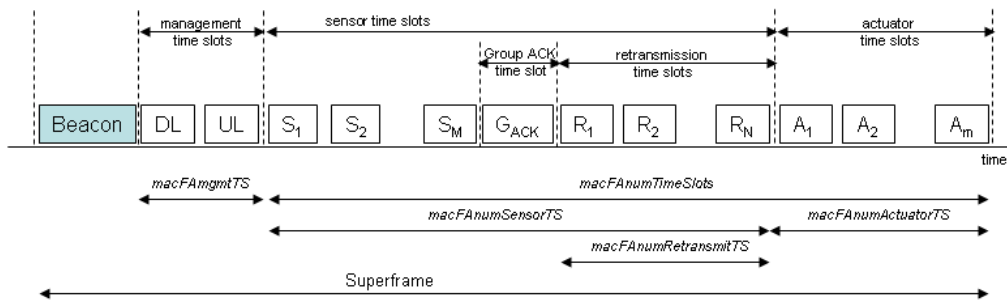


18  
 19  
 20 **Figure 1.c—Usage and order of slots in a superframe.**

- 21  
 22 — Beacon Time Slot: always there (cf. 7.5.1.1a.2)  
 23 — Management Time Slots: one time slot for downlink, one time slot for uplink, existence is  
 24 configurable in *macFAMgmtTS* during setup (cf. 7.5.1.1a.3)  
 25 — Sensor Time Slots: *macFAnumSensorTS* time slots for uplink (unidirectional communication),  
 26 *macFAnumRetransmitTS* time slots at the beginning are reserved for retransmissions according to  
 27 the Group Acknowledgement field contained in the beacon (cf. 7.5.1.1a.4, 7.2.2a.1.2 and 7.5.7a.3).  
 28 — Actuator Time Slots: *macFAnumActuatorTS* time slots for uplink / downlink (bi-directional  
 29 communication) (cf. 7.5.1.1a.5)

30  
 31 It is also possible to use a separate Group Acknowledgement ( $G_{ACK}$ ) frame (see 7.2.2a.3.4) in order to  
 32 facilitate retransmissions of the sensor transmissions within the same superframe. The use of a separate  $G_{ACK}$   
 33 is configurable during configuration mode. If the use of a separate  $G_{ACK}$  is configured, the structure of the  
 34 superframe is as depicted in Figure 1.d

1



2

3 **Figure 1.d—Usage and order of slots in a superframe with configured use of separate**  
 4 **GACK**

5 Descriptions of the configuration parameters and intervals for the superframe with a separate GACK are  
 6 only different for the Sensor Time Slots:

- 7 — Beacon Time Slot  
 8 — Management Time Slots  
 9 — Sensor Time Slots:  $macFAnumSensorTS$  denotes the total number of time slots available for sensors  
 10 for uplink (unidirectional) communication. Typically, one time slot is allocated to each sensor. In  
 11 this case,  $M$  denotes the number of sensors. The  $macFAnumRetransmitTS$  denotes the number of  
 12 time slots allocated for sensors that failed their original transmissions prior to the GACK and need  
 13 to retransmit their message.  $N$  denotes the number of sensors that need to retransmit. One time slot  
 14 is allocated for each retransmitting sensor.  
 15 — GACK: It contains an  $M$ -bit bitmap to indicate successful and failed sensor transmissions in the  
 16 same order as the sensor transmissions (cf. 7.2.2a.3.4).  
 17 — Actuator Time Slots

18

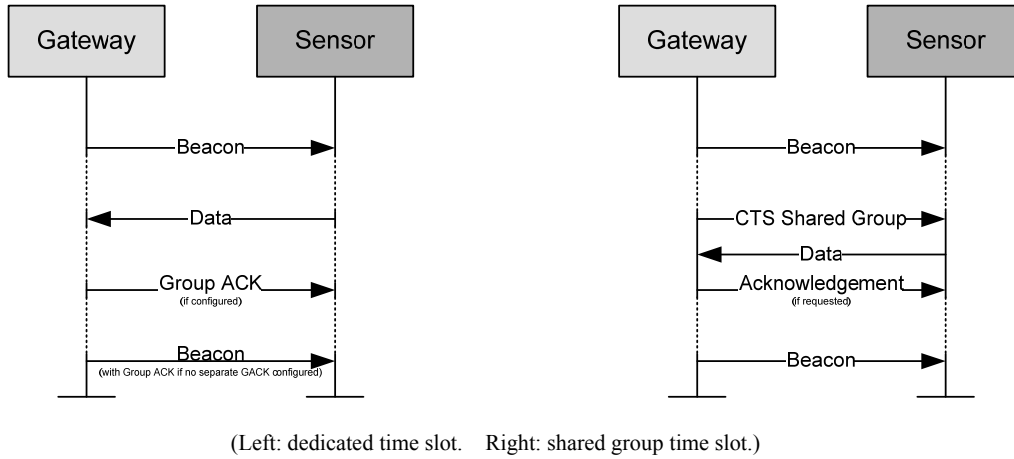
19 In this configuration mode, no group acknowledgment field is present in the beacon frame, because it is  
 20 explicitly reported in the  $G_{ACK}$  time slot.

## 21 5.5.2 Data transfer model

### 22 5.5.2.1 Data transfer to a coordinator

23 *Insert after Figure 6 the following paragraph and figure.*

24 When a device wishes to transfer data to a gateway in a low latency network, it first listens for the network  
 25 beacon. When the beacon is found, the device synchronizes to the superframe structure. At the appropriate  
 26 time, the device transmits its data frame to the gateway. If the device transmits its data frame in a dedicated  
 27 time slot or as slot owner of a shared group time slot, the data frame is transmitted without using CSMA-CA.  
 28 If the device transmits its data frame in a shared group timeslot and is not the slot owner, the data frame is  
 29 transmitted using slotted CSMA-CA as described in 7.5.1.5, or ALOHA, as appropriate. The gateway may  
 30 acknowledge the successful reception of the data by transmitting an optional acknowledgment frame.  
 31 Successful data transmissions in dedicated time slots or by the slot owner are acknowledged by the gateway  
 32 with a Group Acknowledgement either in the next beacon or as a separate GACK frame. This sequence is  
 33 summarized in Figure 6.a.



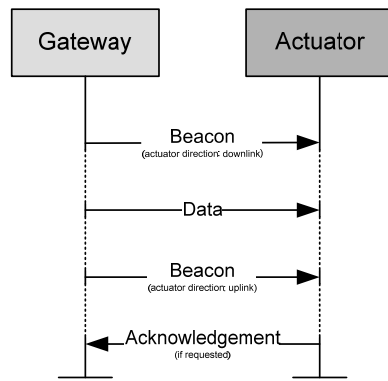
3 **Figure 6.a—Communication to a gateway in a low latency network**

4 **5.5.2.2 Data transfer from a coordinator**

5 *Insert after Figure 8 the following paragraph and figure.*

6 In low latency networks, a data transfer from a gateway is only possible in the macFAnumActuatorTS  
7 actuator time slots (cf. 5.5.1.2) and if the Actuator Direction subfield in the Flags field of the beacon  
8 indicates downlink direction (see 7.2.2a.1.2).

9 When the gateway wishes to transfer data to an actuator in a low latency network, it indicates in the network  
10 beacon that the actuator direction is downlink. At the appropriate time, the gateway transmits its data frame  
11 to the device without using CSMA-CA. The device may acknowledge the successful reception of the data by  
12 transmitting an acknowledgement frame to the gateway in the same time slot of the next superframe. In order  
13 to do so, the actuator direction has to be uplink in that superframe. This sequence is summarized in Figure  
14 8.a.



16 **Figure 8.a—Communication from a gateway to an actuator in a low latency network**

17 **5.5.4 Improving probability of successful delivery**

18 **5.5.4.1 CSMA-CA mechanism**

19 *Insert before 5.5.4.2 the following paragraph.*

20 Low Latency Networks use a slotted CSMA-CA channel access mechanism, where the backoff slots are  
21 aligned

1 — with the start of the beacon transmission in management time slots.

2 — with tSlotTxOwner in shared group time slots.

3 The backoff slots of all devices within one Low Latency Network are aligned to the gateway. Each time a  
4 device wishes to transmit data frames with CSMA-CA at the appropriate places, it locates the boundary of  
5 the next backoff slot and then waits for a random number of backoff slots. If the channel is busy, following  
6 this random backoff, the device waits for another random number of backoff slots before trying to access the  
7 channel again. If the channel is idle, the device begins transmitting on the next available backoff slot  
8 boundary. Acknowledgment and beacon frames are sent without using a CSMA-CA mechanism.

#### 9 **5.5.4.2 ALOHA mechanism for the UWB device**

10

### 11 **5.5.5**

#### 12 **5.5.5.1 Additional power saving features provided by the UWB PHY**

13 *Insert 5.5.6 the following subclause.*

#### 14 **5.5.5.2 Low-energy mechanisms**

15 Two low-energy mechanisms are provided to further reduce energy consumption by allowing devices to  
16 communicate while maintaining low duty cycles. They are Coordinated Sampled Listening (CSL) and  
17 Receiver Initiated Transmission (RIT).

18 Coordinated Sampled Listening (CSL) allows receiving devices to periodically sample the channel(s) for  
19 incoming transmissions at low duty cycles. The receiving device and the transmitting device are coordinated  
20 to reduce transmit overhead.

21 Receiver Initiated Transmission (RIT) allows receiving devices to periodically broadcast data request frames  
22 and transmitting devices only transmit to a receiving device upon receiving a data request frame. RIT is  
23 suitable for the following application scenarios:

24 — Low data traffic rate and loose latency requirement (tens of seconds per transmission)

25 — Local regulations restricting the duration of continuous radio transmissions (e.g., 950MHZ band in  
26 Japan).

27

#### 28 **5.5.6 Security**

### 29 **5.5.7**

### 30 **5.5.8**

31

1 **5.6 Concept of primitives**

2 **6. PHY specification**

3 **6.1**

4 **7. MAC sublayer specification**

5 **7.1 MAC sublayer service specification**

6 **7.1.1 MAC data service**

7 **7.1.1.1 MCPS-DATA.request**

8 *Insert before 7.1.1.1 the following sentence.*

9 For PA, the following requirement applies in addition:

10 These addresses shall be specified in any of the destination addresses in DstAddr and additionalDstAddr.

11 **7.1.1.1.1 Semantics of the service primitive**

12 *Insert after the heading of 7.1.1.1.1 the following subclause.*

13 **7.1.1.1.1.1 General**

14 *Insert before 7.1.1.1.2 the following paragraph and subclause.*

15 The semantics of the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive for PA shall have additional parameter  
16 numberOfAdditionalDstAddr and additionalDstAddr compared to 7.1.1.1.1.1, see 7.1.1.1.1.2.

17 **7.1.1.1.1.2 PA-Semantics of the service primitive**

18 The semantics of the MCPS-DATA.request primitive are as follow:

19     MCPS-DATA.request     (  
20         SrcAddrMode,  
21         DstAddrMode,  
22         DstPANId,  
23         DstAddr,  
24         msduLength,  
25         msdu,  
26         msduHandle,  
27         TxOptions,  
28         SecurityLevel,  
29         KeyIdMode,

1           KeySource,  
 2           KeyIndex,  
 3           numberOfAdditionalDstAddr  
 4           additionalDstAddr,  
 5           )

6  
 7 Table 41.a specifies parameters for the MCPS-DATA.request primitive.  
 8

9                                   **Table 41.a—MCPS-DATA.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
<b>SrcAddrMode</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>DstAddrMode</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>DstPANId</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>DstAddr</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>msduLength</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>msdu</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>msduHandle</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>TxOptions</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>SecurityLevel</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>KeyIdMode</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>KeySource</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>KeyIndex</b>	Table 41	Table 41	See Table 41 in IEEE802.15.4-2006.
<b>numberOfAdditionalDstAddr</b>	Integer	0x00-0x04	If the number of additionalDstAddr is zero, no additionalDstAddr will follow.
<b>additionalDstAddr</b>	List of DstAddr	0x0000-0xffff for each DstAddr	One or more alternate destination addresses. The data SPDU should be transferred to the destination specified by either DstAddr or any of destinations in additionalDstAddr.

10

11   **7.1.1.1.2 When generated**

12   *Insert before 7.1.1.1.3 the following paragraph.*

13   For PA, the following requirement applies in addition:

14   These addresses shall be specified in any of the destination addresses in DstAddr and additionalDstAddr.

15   **7.1.1.1.3 Effect on receipt**

16   *Insert before 7.1.1.2 the following paragraph.*

17   For PA, the following requirement applies in addition:

18   If numberOfAdditionalDstAddr is not zero and the transmission to the first transfer attempt to DestAddr  
 19   fails, then MAC should transfer the data SPDU to any of the alternate destinations specified in  
 20   additionalDstAddr using the linkHandle provided in linkHandleList. MAC should transfer the requested data  
 21   SPDU on one of these links. MAC will select a link to transmit (or retransmit if ACK is not received) in  
 22   earliest possible opportunity.



1 **7.1.1.2 MCPS-DATA.confirm**

2 **7.1.1.2.1 Semantics of the service primitive**

3 *Insert after the heading of 7.1.1.2.1 the following subclause header.*

4 **7.1.1.2.1.1 General**

5 *Insert before 7.1.1.2.2 the following paragraph and subclause.*

6 The semantics of the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive for PA shall have the parameter according to  
7 7.1.1.2.1.2.

8 **7.1.1.2.1.2 PA-Semantics of the service primitive**

9 The PA-Semantics of the service primitive is as follows:

```
10     MCPS-DATA.confirm           (
11         msduHandle,
12         status,
13         Timestamp,
14         DstAddr,
15     )
```

16 Table 78.a specifies parameters for the MCPS-DATA.request primitive.

17

18

**Table 78.a—MCPS-DATA.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
<b>msduHandle</b>	<b>Table 78</b>	<b>Table 78</b>	<b>See Table 78.</b>
<b>status</b>	<b>Table 78</b>	<b>Table 78</b>	<b>See Table 78.</b>
<b>Timestamp</b>	<b>Table 78</b>	<b>Table 78</b>	<b>See Table 78.</b>
<b>DstAddr</b>	<b>Device address</b>	<b>As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter of MCPS-DATA.request</b>	<b>Destination address to which the data SPDU was transferred.</b>

19

20 **7.1.1.2.2 When generated**

21 **7.1.1.2.3 Appropriate usage**

22 *Insert before 7.1.1.3 the following paragraph.*

23 For PA, the following requirement applies in addition:

24 If the transmission attempt was successful, DstAddr is set to the address of the destination to which the data  
25 SPDU was transferred.

26 **7.1.1.3 MCPS-DATA.indication**

27 **7.1.2 MAC management service**

28 *Insert after the heading of 7.1.2 the following subclause.*

1 **7.1.2.1 General**2 *Insert before 7.1.3 the following subclauses.*3 **7.1.2.2 PA-MAC management service**4 For PA the MAC management services shown in Table 82.a are mandatory. The primitives are discussed in  
5 the subclauses referenced in the table.6 **Table 82.a—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP for PA**

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME	7.1.21.1.1	—	—	7.1.21.1.2
MLME-SET-LINK	7.1.21.2.1	—	—	7.1.21.2.2
MLME-PA-MODE	7.1.21.3.1	—	—	7.1.21.3.2
MLME-LISTEN	7.1.21.4.1	—	—	7.1.21.4.2
MLME-ADVERTISE	7.1.21.5.1	7.1.21.5.2	—	7.1.21.5.3
MLME-KEEP-ALIVE	7.1.21.6.1	—	—	7.1.21.6.2
MLME-JOIN	7.1.21.7.1	7.1.21.7.2	—	7.1.21.7.3
MLME-ACTIVATE	7.1.21.8.1	7.1.21.8.2	—	7.1.21.8.3
MLME-DISCONNECT	7.1.21.9.1	7.1.21.9.2	—	7.1.21.9.3

7

8 **7.1.2.3 LL-MAC management service**9 **LL-provider Comment: Other primitives might be needed to be extended for 1-octet**  
10 **MHR data frames.**11 For LL the MAC management services shown in Table 82.a are mandatory. The primitives are discussed in  
12 the subclauses referenced in the table.13 **Table 82.b—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP for LL**

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
MLME-LL_NW.discovery	7.1.22.1.2	—	—	7.1.22.1.3
MLME-LL_NW.configuration	7.1.22.1.4	—	—	7.1.22.1.5
MLME- LL_NW.online	7.1.22.1.6	7.1.22.1.7	—	—

14

15 **7.1.2.4 CM-MAC management service**16 For the commercial (C) applications the MAC management services shown in Table 82.c are mandatory.  
17 The primitives are discussed in the subclauses referenced in the table.

1 **Table 82.c—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP for CM**

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
MLME-EGTS	7.1.23.1.2	7.1.23.1.4	—	7.1.23.1.3
MLME-CM-START	7.1.23.2.1	—	—	—
MCPS-CM-DATA	7.1.23.2.1	7.1.1.2	—	7.1.1.3
MLME-EGTSinfo	7.1.23.4.2	—	—	7.1.23.4.3
MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSPRT	7.1.23.5.2	7.1.23.5.4	—	7.1.23.5.3
MLME-CM-BEACON-NOTIFY	—	7.1.23.6.2	—	—
MCPS-CM-SCAN	7.1.23.7.2	—	—	7.1.23.7.3

2

3 **7.1.3 Association primitives**4 **C: tbd – changes & additions to be provided**5 **7.1.4 Disassociation primitives**6 **C: tbd – changes & additions to be provided**

7

8 **7.1.5 Beacon notification primitive**9 **C: tbd – changes & additions to be provided**

10

11 **7.1.7 GTS management primitives**12 **7.1.7.1 MLME-GTS.request**

13

14 **7.1.14 MLME-START**

15

16 **7.1.16 Primitives for requesting data from a coordinator**

17

18 **7.1.17 Primitives for specifying dynamic preamble (for UWB PHYs)**19 **7.1.20 MAC enumeration description**20 *Insert the following row at the bottom of Table 119.*

Enumeration	Value	Description
FCS_ERROR	TBD	The received data frame contains incorrect value in the FCS field in the MFR.

1  
2 *Insert before the heading of 7.2 the following subclauses.*

3 **In a consolidated/integrated new edition the new subclauses 7.21 ... 7.23 should be**  
4 **moved before 7.20.**

5 **7.1.21 PA-specific MAC sublayer service specification**

6 **7.1.21.1 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME**

7 **7.1.21.1.1 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request**

8 **7.1.21.1.1.1 General**

9 The MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request primitive is used to add, delete, or change a slotframe at the MAC  
10 layer.

11 **7.1.21.1.1.2 Semantics**

12 The semantics of the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request primitive is as follows:

```

13 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request (
14     slotframeId,
15     operation,
16     size,
17     channelPage,
18     channelMap,
19     activeFlag
20 )
    
```

21 Table 120.a specifies parameters for the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request primitive.

22 **Table 120.a—MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
slotframeId	Integer	0x00-0xff	Unique identifier of the slotframe.
operation	Enumeration	ADD DELETE MODIFY	Operation to perform on the slotframe.
size	Integer	0x0000-0xffff	Number of slots in the new frame.
channelPage	Integer	Selected from the available channel pages supported by the PHY (see 6.1.2)	Channel page supported by PHY.
channelMap	Bitmap	Array of bits	Indicating which frequency channels in the channel page are to be used for channel hopping. 27-bit bit field for Channel Page 0, 1, and 2
activeFlag	Enumeration	TRUE FALSE	Slotframe is active. Slotframe is not active.

23

### 1 7.1.21.1.1.3 When generated

2 An MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request is generated by the device management layer and issued to the  
3 MLME to create, delete, or update a slotframe on the MAC layer.

### 4 7.1.21.1.1.4 Effect on receipt

5 On receipt of an MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request, the MLME shall verify the parameters passed with the  
6 primitive. If the requested operation is ADD, the MLME shall attempt to add an entry into the  
7 macSlotFrameTable. If the operation is MODIFY, it shall attempt to update an existing slotframe record in  
8 the table. If the operation is DELETE, all parameters except slotframeId and operation shall be ignored, and  
9 the slotframe record must be deleted from the macSlotFrameTable. If there are links in the slotframe that is  
10 being deleted, the links shall be deleted from the MAC layer. If the device is in the middle of using a link in  
11 the slotframe that is being updated or deleted, the update should be postponed until after the link operation  
12 completes.

## 13 7.1.21.1.2 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm

### 14 7.1.21.1.2.1 General

15 The MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive reports the results of the MLME-SET-  
16 SLOTFRAME.request command.

### 17 7.1.21.1.2.2 Semantics

18 The semantics of the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive is as follows:

```
19 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm (
20     slotframeId,
21     operation,
22     status
23 )
```

24 Table 120.b specifies parameters for the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive.

25 **Table 120.b—MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
slotframeId	Integer	0x00-0xff	Unique identifier of the slotframe to be added, modified, or deleted.
operation	Enumeration	ADD DELETE MODIFY	Operation to perform on the slotframe.
status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAMETER SLOTFRAME_NOT_FOUND MAX_SLOTFRAMES_EXCEEDED	Results of the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request command.

26

### 27 7.1.21.1.2.3 When generated

28 The MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME when the MLME-SET-  
29 SLOTFRAME.request is completed.

30 If any of the arguments fail a range check, the status shall be INVALID\_PARAMETER. If a new slotframe  
31 is being added and the macSlotFrameTable is already full, the status shall be  
32 MAX\_SLOTFRAMES\_EXCEEDED. If an update or deletion is being requested and the corresponding  
33 slotframe cannot be found, the status shall be SLOTFRAME\_NOT\_FOUND. If an add-on is being

1 requested with a slotframeID corresponding to an existing slotframe, the status shall be INVALID  
2 PARAMETER.

### 3 7.1.21.1.2.4 Effect on receipt

4 On receipt of a MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive, the device management application is  
5 notified of the status of its corresponding MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request.

## 6 7.1.21.2 MLME-SET-LINK

### 7 7.1.21.2.1 MLME-SET-LINK.request

#### 8 7.1.21.2.1.1 General

9 The MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive requests to add a new link, modify or delete an existing link at the  
10 MAC layer. The operationType parameter indicates whether the MLME-SET-LINK operation is to add or to  
11 delete a link.

#### 12 7.1.21.2.1.2 Semantics

13 The semantics of the MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive is as follows:

14 MLME-SET-LINK.request to add a link (  
15 operationType (ADD\_LINK or MODIFY\_LINK),  
16 linkHandle,  
17 slotframeId,  
18 timeslot,  
19 chanOffset,  
20 linkOptions,  
21 linkType,  
22 nodeAddr  
23 )

24 MLME-SET-LINK.request to delete a link (  
25 operationType (DELETE\_LINK),  
26 linkHandle,  
27 )

28 Table 120.c specifies parameters for the MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive with the ADD\_LINK or  
29 MODIFY\_LINK operationType.

30 **Table 120.c– MLME-SET-LINK.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
operation	Enumeration	ADD_LINK, MODIFY_LINK, DELETE_LINK	Type of link management operation to be performed.
linkHandle	Integer	0x00–0xFF	Unique identifier (local to specified slotframe) for the link.
slotframeId	Integer	0x00-0xFF	Slotframe ID of the link to be added.
timeslot	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Timeslot of the link to be added.
chanOffset	Integer	0x01-0xFF	Channel offset of the link.
linkOptions	Bitmap	b000 – b111	b001 = Transmit. b010 = Receive. b100 = Shared.

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
linkType	Enumeration	NORMAL ADVERTISING	Type of link. Links marked advertising are to be included in the advertisement frame generated in response to a MLME-ADVVERTISE.request.
nodeAddr	Integer	0x0000-0xffff	Address list of neighbor devices connected to the link. 0xffff means the broadcasting to every node.

1

2 **7.1.21.2.1.3 When generated**

3 When operationType=ADD\_LINK or MODIFY\_LINK:

4 MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive is generated by the device management layer to add a link or to  
5 modify an existing link in a slotframe.

6 When operationType=DELETE\_LINK:

7 MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive is generated by the device management layer to delete an  
8 existing link at the MAC layer.9 **7.1.21.2.1.4 Effect on receipt**

10 When operationType=ADD\_LINK or MODIFY\_LINK:

11 On receipt of the MLME-SET-LINK.request, the MAC layer shall attempt to add the indicated link  
12 to the macLinkTable and add the new neighbor to its neighbor table, if needed. Upon completion, the  
13 result of the operation must be reported through the corresponding MLME-SET-LINK.confirm  
14 primitive. The use of the Shared bit in the linkOptions bitmap indicates that if the link is also a  
15 transmit link that the device must back off according to the method described in 7.5.5. Its behavior is  
16 not defined for receive links. Resolution between the short form nodeAddr and its long form address  
17 (8 octets) may be needed for security purposes. This is determined by NHL (next higher layer).

18 When operationType=DELETE\_LINK:

19 On receipt of the MLME-SET-LINK request the device shall attempt to remove the link from the  
20 macLinkTable. If the link is currently in use, the deletion shall be postponed until after the link  
21 operation completes.22 **7.1.21.2.2 MLME-SET-LINK.confirm**23 **7.1.21.2.2.1 General**

24 The SET-LINK.confirm primitive indicates the result of add, modify or delete link operation.

25 **7.1.21.2.2.2 Semantics**

26 The semantics of the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive is as follows:

27 MLME-SET-LINK.confirm (  
28 status,  
29 linkHandle  
30 )

31 Table 120.d specifies parameters for the MLME-SET-LINK.confirm primitive.

1

**Table 120.d—MLME-SET-LINK.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAMETER UNKNOWN_SLOTFRAME MAX_LINKS_EXCEEDED MAX_NEIGHBORS_EXCEEDED	Result of the add or modify link operation.
linkHandle	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Unique (local to specified slotframe) identifier for the link.

2

**7.1.21.2.2.3 When generated**

The MLME-SET-LINK.confirm is generated as a result of the MLME-SET-LINK.request operation.

If any of the arguments fail a range check, the status shall be INVALID\_PARAMETER. If a new slotframe is being added and the macSlotFrameTable is already full, the status shall be MAX\_SLOTFRAMES\_EXCEEDED. If an update or deletion is being requested and the corresponding slotframe cannot be found, the status shall be SLOTFRAME\_NOT\_FOUND. If an add is being requested with a slotframeID corresponding to an existing slotframe, the status shall be INVALID\_PARAMETER.

**7.1.21.2.2.4 Effect on receipt**

The layer that issued the MLME-SET-LINK.request to the MAC may process the result of the operation. The status of the primitive shall indicate SUCCESS if the operation completed successfully. Otherwise, the status indicates the cause of the failure. If the operationType=ADD\_LINK of the MLME-SET-LINK.request and the linkHandle already exists, the status of the primitive shall indicate INVALID\_PARAMETER.

**7.1.21.3 MLME-PA-MODE****7.1.21.3.1 MLME-PA-MODE.request**

The MLME-PA-MODE.request puts the MAC into PA-mode, or out of PA-mode.

**7.1.21.3.1.1 Semantics**

The semantics of the MLME-PA-MODE.request primitive is as follows:

```
MLME-PA-MODE.request (
    modeSwitch
)
```

Table 120.e specifies parameters for the MLME-PA-MODE.request primitive.

25

**Table 120.e—MLME-PA-MODE.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
modeSwitch	Enumeration	ON, OFF	Target mode. This mode indicates whether PA-mode should be started or stopped.

**7.1.21.3.1.2 When generated**

The MLME-PA-MODE.request may be generated by the higher layer after the device has received advertisements from the network and is synchronized to a network (i.e. in response to an MLME-ADVISE.indication).



### 1 **7.1.21.3.1.3 Effect on receipt**

2 Upon receipt of the request, the MAC shall start operating its PA- state machine using slotframes and links  
 3 already contained in its database. To successfully complete this request the device must already be  
 4 synchronized to a network. Once in PA-mode, non-PA- frames are ignored by the device until it is taken out  
 5 of PA-mode or the MAC is reset by a higher layer.

### 6 **7.1.21.3.2 MLME-PA-MODE.confirm**

7 The MLME-PA-MODE.confirm primitive reports the result of the MLME-PA-MODE.request primitive.

#### 8 **7.1.21.3.2.1 Semantics**

9 The semantics of the MLME-PA-MODE.confirm primitive is as follows:

```
10 MLME-PA-MODE.confirm (
11     modeSwitch,
12     status
13 )
```

14 Table 120.f specifies parameters for the MLME-PA-MODE.confirm primitive.

15 **Table 120.f—MLME-PA-MODE.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
modeSwitch	Enumeration	ON, OFF	Target mode. This mode indicates whether this confirmation is due to PA-mode ON request or OFF request.
status	Enumeration	SUCCESS NO_SYNC	

16

#### 17 **7.1.21.3.2.2 When generated**

18 The MLME-PA-MODE.confirm is generated by the MAC layer to indicate completion of the corresponding  
 19 request. If the corresponding request was to turn on the PA-MODE, but the MAC layer has not been  
 20 synchronized to a network, the status shall be NO\_SYNC. Otherwise, the status shall be SUCCESS.

21 If the corresponding request was to turn off the PA-MODE, the status shall be SUCCESS, and the MAC  
 22 layer will stop the PA-MODE operation.

#### 23 **7.1.21.3.2.3 Effect on receipt**

24 The higher layer may use the confirmation to process the result of MLME-PA-MODE.request.

### 25 **7.1.21.4 MLME-LISTEN**

#### 26 **7.1.21.4.1 MLME-LISTEN.request**

##### 27 **7.1.21.4.1.1 Semantics**

28 The semantics of the MLME-LISTEN.request primitive is as follows:

```
29 MLME-LISTEN.request (
30     time,
```

1            numPageChannel,  
 2            pageChannelsDes[]  
 3            )

4 Table 120.g specifies parameters for the MLME-LISTEN.request primitive.

5            **Table 120.g—MLME-LISTEN.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
onTime	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	The amount of time (10 ms units) to stay on each channel. 0x0000 indicates that the MAC stops listening
offTime	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	The amount of time (10 ms units) to wait between channel changes.
numPageChannel	Integer	0x01-0xFF	The number of page channel descriptors in the page channels array.
pageChannelsDes[]	Table 120.h	Table 120.h	Array of page channel descriptor. See Table 120.h for the format of page channel descriptor.

6

7

**Table 120.h—MLME-LISTEN.request pageChannelDesc parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
channelPageId	Integer	Selected from the available channel pages supported by the PHY (see 6.1.2)	Channel page ID.
numChannel	Integer	0x01-0xFF	The number of channels in this channel page to be included in listening.
Channels[]	Array of Channel	Table 4.	The array of channels on which to listen. See Table 4 for the valid range of channels in each channel page.

8

#### 9    **7.1.21.4.1.2 When generated**

10 The MLME-LISTEN.request shall be generated by the next higher layer to initiate the search for a PA-  
 11 network.

#### 12    **7.1.21.4.1.3 Effect on receipt**

13 Upon receipt of the request the MAC layer shall activate the radio on the indicated channel and wait for an  
 14 Advertisement command. The MAC shall listen on Channel[0] for onTime, inactivate the radio for offTime,  
 15 then repeat with Channels[1], etc. After listening to the last channel in Channels[], the MAC returns to  
 16 Channel[0]. Valid Advertisement command frames received in this state shall result in the generation of  
 17 MLME-ADVVERTISE.indication. All other frames shall be dropped. The MAC shall stay in the listening  
 18 state until it receives a MLML-LISTEN.request with an onTime of 0x0000, or a MLME-PA-MODE.request  
 19 is received. The higher layer selects the advertiser and the network before setting the slotframe, link(s), and  
 20 PA-mode. Advertisements will continue to be received, and passed on to the higher layer until leaving the  
 21 listen state.

#### 22    **7.1.21.4.2 MLME-LISTEN.confirm**

##### 23    **7.1.21.4.2.1 Semantics**

24 The semantics of the MLME-LISTEN.confirm primitive is as follows:

25            MLME-LISTEN.confirm    (  
 26            status

1 )

2 Table 120.i specifies parameters for the MLME-LISTEN.confirm primitive.

3 **Table 120.i—MLME-LISTEN.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAMETER	

4

5 **7.1.21.4.2.2 When generated**

6 The MAC layer shall generate MLME-LISTEN.confirm when it completes the listen operation started by  
7 MLME-LISTEN.request.

8 **7.1.21.4.2.3 Effect on receipt**

9 On receipt of the primitive, the higher layer may continue with its joining state machine.

10 **7.1.21.5 MLME-ADVERTISE**

11 **7.1.21.5.1 MLME-ADVERTISE.request**

12 **7.1.21.5.1.1 Semantics**

13 The semantics of the MLME-ADVERTISE.request primitive is as follows:

14 MLME-ADVERTISE.request (

15 advertiseInterval,

16 channelPage,

17 channelMap,

18 hoppingSequenceId,

19 timeslotTemplateId,

20 securityLevel,

21 joinPriority,

22 numSlotframe,

23 slotframes[]

24 )

25 Table 120.j specifies parameters for the MLME-ADVERTISE.request primitive.

1

**Table 120.j—MLME-ADVERTISE.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
advertiseInterval	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	Interval specifying the transmission of the Advertisement command (in 10 ms units)
channelPage	Integer	Selected from the available channel pages supported by the PHY (see 6.1.2)	Channel page supported by PHY.
channelMap	Bitmap	Array of bits	Map of channels to be included in the Advertisement command.
hoppingSequenceId	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	ID of hopping sequence used.
timeslotTemplateId	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	ID of timeslot template used.
securityLevel	Enumeration	Table 136	Security level in the Advertisement command. See Table 136.
joinPriority	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Join priority to be indicated in the Advertisement command.
numSlotframe	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	Number of slotframes to be indicated in the Advertisement command.
Slotframes[]	See Table 120.k	See Table 120.k	See Table 120.k.

2

3

4

**Table 120.k—MLME-ADVERTISE.request Slotframe parameters (per slotframe)**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
slotframeId	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Slotframe ID.

5

**7.1.21.5.1.2 When generated**

The next higher layer requests the MAC layer to start sending Advertisement command frames using MLME-ADVERTISE.request so that new nodes can find the network and this device.

**7.1.21.5.1.3 Effect on receipt**

Upon receipt of the request the MAC layer shall send the Advertisement command frame on the first available TX link. Whenever the time specified in AdvertiseInterval lapses from the previous transmission of Advertisement command frame, the MAC layer shall repeat the Advertisement command frame on next TX link available. The remaining parameters specify the slotframes to be included in the Advertisement command frames. Links in the specified slotframes with an Advertising linkType are to be included in the Advertisement command.

**7.1.21.5.2 ADVERTISE.indication**

The MLME-ADVERTISE.indication indicates that a device received an Advertisement command frame.

**7.1.21.5.2.1 Semantics**

The semantics of the MLME-ADVERTISE.indication primitive is as follows:

```

MLME-ADVERTISE.indication (
    PANId,
    timingInformation,
    channelPage,
    channelMap,
    hoppingSequenceId,

```

1 timeslotTemplateld,  
 2 securityLevel,  
 3 joinPriority,  
 4 linkQuality,  
 5 numSlotframes,  
 6 slotframes[]  
 7 )

8 Table 120.l specifies parameters for the MLME-ADVERTISE.indication primitive.

9 **Table 120.l—MLME-ADVERTISE.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
PANId	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	The PAN identifier indicated in the Advertisement command.
timingInformation			The time information (absolute slot number) of the timeslot in which the Advertisement command was received.
channelPage	Integer	Selected from the available channel pages supported by the PHY (see 6.1.2)	Channel page.
channelMap	Bitmap	Array of bits	Bit map of channels.
hoppingSequenceId	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	ID of hopping sequence used.
timeslotTemplateld	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	ID of timeslot template used.
securityLevel	Enumeration	Table 136	Security level in advertisement packet See Table 136.
joinPriority	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Join priority indicated in advertisement.
linkQuality	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Link quality indicated in the frame by the PHY layer.
numSlotframes	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	Number of slotframes indicated in the Advertisement command received.
slotframes[]	See Table 120.k	See Table 120.k	See Table 120.k

10

#### 11 **7.1.21.5.2.2 When generated**

12 The MLME-ADVERTISE.indication shall be generated when an Advertisement command frame has been  
 13 received by the device. Upon receiving a valid Advertisement command, the device shall be synchronized to  
 14 the network and ready to enable the PA-MODE if requested by the higher layer.

#### 15 **7.1.21.5.2.3 Effect on receipt**

16 The higher layer may wait and record more than one advertisement and then select the desired advertising  
 17 device before configuring the superframe(s) and link(s) and before enabling PA-MODE. After joining a PA-  
 18 network, the high layer uses the indication to collect the list of neighbors and information about neighbors.

#### 19 **7.1.21.5.3 MLME-ADVERTISE.confirm**

##### 20 **7.1.21.5.3.1 Semantics**

21 The semantics of the MLME-ADVERTISE.confirm primitive is as follows:

22 MLME-ADVERTISE.confirm (

23 status

24 )

25 Table 120.m specifies parameters for the MLME-ADVERTISE.confirm primitive.

1

**Table 120.m—MLME-ADVVERTISE.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAMETER	

2

**7.1.21.5.3.2 When generated**

The MAC layer shall generate MLME-ADVVERTISE.confirm when it starts sending the Advertisement command.

**7.1.21.5.3.3 Effect on receipt**

On receipt of the primitive, the higher layer may expect that it will receive the Join command on any of the links provided in the Advertisement command.

**7.1.21.6 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE****7.1.21.6.1 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request****7.1.21.6.1.1 Semantics**

The semantics of the MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request primitive is as follows:

```
MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request      (
    dstAddr,
    linkHandle,
    period
)
```

Table 120.n specifies parameters for the MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request primitive.

19

**Table 120.n—MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
dstAddr	Integer	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	Address of neighbor device to maintain the timing. Keepalives with dstAddr of 0xFFFF do not expect to be acknowledged.
period	Integer	0x0001 – 0xFFFF	Duration of quiet time in seconds that a Keep-Alive command frame should be sent if no traffic is present.

20

**7.1.21.6.1.2 When generated****7.1.21.6.1.3 Effect on receipt**

Upon receipt of the request, the MAC layer shall monitor the frame sent to the destination node specified in the dstAddr parameter. If no frame is sent to the destination node for any duration defined by the period parameter, the MAC shall send an empty (no MAC payload) frame to the node dstAddr. The Sequence Number subfield of the MHR of the frame shall be set to the least significant byte of the absolute slot number. Resolution between the short form dstAddr and its long form address (8 octets) may be needed for security purposes. This is determined by NHL (next higher layer).

1 **7.1.21.6.2 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm**2 **7.1.21.6.2.1 Semantics**

3 The semantics of the MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm primitive is as follows:

```

4     MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm      (
5         status
6     )

```

7 Table 120.o specifies parameters for the MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm primitive.

8 **Table 120.o—MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAMETER	

9

10 **7.1.21.6.2.2 When generated**

11 The MAC layer shall generate MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm to acknowledge that it received MLME-  
 12 KEEP-ALIVE request.

13 **7.1.21.6.2.3 Effect on receipt**

14 None.

15 **7.1.21.7 MLME-JOIN**16 **7.1.21.7.1 MLME-JOIN.request**17 **7.1.21.7.1.1 Semantics**

18 The semantics of the MLME-JOIN.request primitive is as follows:

```

19     MLME-JOIN.request      (
20         dstAddr,
21         securityInformation,
22         numNeighbors,
23         neighbors[]
24     )

```

25 Table 120.p specifies parameters for the MLME-JOIN.request primitive.

26 **Table 120.p—MLME-JOIN.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
dstAddr	Integer	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	Address of neighbor device to send Join command.
securityInformation	Table 120.q	Table 120.q	See Table 120.q for the detail.
numNeighbors	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	Number of neighbors found by the joining device.
neighbors	Table 120.r	Table 120.r	Neighbor information for the number of neighbors specified in numNeighbors. See Table 120.r for the definition of a neighbor.

1  
2**Table 120.q—MLME-JOIN.request securityInformation parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
TBD	TBD	TBD	The securityInformation definition will be defined with Security sub-group.

3  
4**Table 120.r—MLME-JOIN.request neighbors parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
neighborId	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	16 bit address of neighbor.
RSSI	Integer	-128 to 127	Received signal strength (in dBm) of frames received from the neighbor.

5

**7.1.21.7.1.2 When generated**

7 Device management of a new device (or device who lost connection with the PA-network) will invoke this  
8 service primitive to join the PA-network.

**7.1.21.7.1.3 Effect on receipt**

10 Upon receipt of the request, the MAC layer shall send either a Join command frame or data frame containing  
11 a higher layer management packet requesting to join the network, using any link to the dstAddr. The content  
12 of the Join command frame will be formatted using the other parameters and the format of Join command  
13 frame is specified in 7.3.10.2.9. If a data frame with the higher layer management packet is used instead of a  
14 Join command frame, the content of the higher layer payload of the data frame containing the request to join  
15 the network is constructed using the other parameters. The explicit format of the higher layer payload is out  
16 of scope of this document. Resolution between the short form dstAddr and its long form address (8 octets)  
17 may be needed for security purposes. This is determined by NHL (next higher layer).

**7.1.21.7.2 MLME-JOIN.indication****7.1.21.7.2.1 Semantics**

20 The semantics of the MLME-JOIN.indication primitive is as follows:

```

21 MLME-JOIN.indication (
22     linkHandle,
23     newNodeAddr,
24     securityInformation,
25     numNeighbors,
26     neighbors[]
27 )

```

28 Table 120.s specifies parameters for the MLME-JOIN.indication primitive.



1

**Table 120.s—MLME-JOIN.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
linkHandle	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Unique identifier for the link that Join command frame is received on.
newNodeAddr	Array of octets	64-bit binary string	64-bit long address of new device sending the Join command.
securityInformation	Table 120.q	Table 120.q	See Table 120.q.
numNeighbors	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	Number of neighbors reported by the joining device.
Neighbors	Table 120.r	Table 120.r	Neighbor information for the number of neighbors specified in numNeighbors. See Table 120.r for the definition of a neighbor in neighbors.

2 **7.1.21.7.2.2 When generated**

3 MLME-JOIN.indication indicates the Device Management layer that the MAC layer has received a Join  
4 command frame from a new device attempting to join the PA-network.

5 **7.1.21.7.2.3 Effect on receipt**

6 Upon receipt of the MLME-JOIN.indication, the Device Management layer shall invoke the device  
7 management procedure to transfer the join attempt of the new device to the Device Manager.

8 **7.1.21.7.3 MLME-JOIN.confirm**9 **7.1.21.7.3.1 Semantics**

10 The semantics of the MLME-JOIN.confirm primitive is as follows:

```
11 MLME-JOIN.confirm (
12     status
13 )
```

14 Table 120.t specifies parameters for the MLME-JOIN.confirm primitive.

15 **Table 120.t—MLME-JOIN.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAMETER	

16

17 **7.1.21.7.3.2 When generated**

18 The MAC layer shall generate MLME-JOIN.confirm to acknowledge that it received the MLME-  
19 JOIN.request primitive.

20 **7.1.21.7.3.3 Effect on receipt**

21 None

1 **7.1.21.8 MLME-ACTIVATE**2 **7.1.21.8.1 MLME-ACTIVATE.request**3 **7.1.21.8.1.1 Semantics**

4 The semantics of the MLME-ACTIVATE.request primitive is as follows:

```

5 MLME-ACTIVATE.request (
6     dstAddr,
7     securityInformation,
8     slotframes[]
9 )

```

10 Table 120.u and Table 120.w specify parameters for the MLME-ACTIVATE.request primitive.

11 **Table 120.u—MLME-ACTIVATE.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
dstAddr	Integer	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	Address of neighbor device to send Activate command.
securityInformation	Table 120.v	Table 120.v	See Table 120.v for details.
slotframes[]	Table 120.k	Table 120.k	See Table 120.k.

12

13 **Table 120.v—MLME-ACTIVATE.request securityInformation parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
TBD	TBD	TBD	The securityInformation definition will be defined with the Security sub-group.

14

15 **Table 120.w—MLME-ACTIVATE.request slotframe parameters (per slotframe)**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
slotframeId	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Slotframe ID.
slotframeSize	Integer	0x00 – 0xFFFF	Slotframe size.
numLink	Integer	0x0 – 0xF	Number of links for the specified slotframe to be indicated in the Advertisement command.
links	Table 120.x	Table 120.x	See Table 120.x for parameters (per link)

16

17 **Table 120.x—MLME-ACTIVATE.request Link parameters (per link)**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
timeslot	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	Timeslot.
chanOffset	Integer	0x00 – 0xFF	Channel offset.
linkOption	Enumeration	TX RX SHARED_TX	Option of the link.

18

19 **7.1.21.8.1.2 When generated**

20 An Activate command is generated by a higher layer in response to a Join command or a Join data frame.

21 **7.1.21.8.1.3 Effect on receipt**22 Upon receipt of the request, the MAC layer shall send either the Activate command frame to activate the  
23 new joining device, or a data frame containing a higher layer management packet to activate the new joining

1 device. The MAC shall send the Activate command frame to the node using the linkHandle parameter. The  
 2 content of the Activate command is formatted using the other parameters. If a data frame with a higher layer  
 3 management packet is used instead of Activate command frame, the content of the higher layer payload to  
 4 activate the network is constructed using the other parameters. The explicit format of the higher layer  
 5 payload is out of scope of this document. Resolution between the short form dstAddr and its long form  
 6 address (8 octets) may be needed for security purposes. This is determined by NHL (next higher layer).

## 7 7.1.21.8.2 MLME-ACTIVATE.indication

### 8 7.1.21.8.2.1 Semantics

9 The semantics of the MLME-ACTIVATE.indication primitive is as follows:

```
10 MLME-ACTIVATE.indication (
11     srcAddr,
12     securityInformation,
13 )
```

14 Table 120.y specifies parameters for the MLME-ACTIVATE.indication primitive.

15 **Table 120.y—MLME-ACTIVATE.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
srcAddr	Integer	0x0000 - 0xFFFF	Address of neighbor from whom the Activate command was received.
securityInformation	Table 120.v	Table 120.v	Table 120.v.

16

### 17 7.1.21.8.2.2 When generated

18 MLME-ACTIVATE.indication indicates the device management layer that the MAC layer has received an  
 19 Activate command frame from the neighbor identified in srcAddr.

### 20 7.1.21.8.2.3 Effect on receipt

21 Upon receipt of the MLME-ACTIVATE.indication, the device management layer shall process the  
 22 securityInformation received to set up secure connections. Resolution between the short form srcAddr and  
 23 its long form address (8 octets) may be needed for security purposes. This is determined by NHL (next  
 24 higher layer).

## 25 7.1.21.8.3 MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm

### 26 7.1.21.8.3.1 Semantics

27 The semantics of the MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm primitive is as follows:

```
28 MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm (
29     status
30 )
```

31 Table 120.z specifies parameters for the MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm primitive.

Table 120.z—MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS INVALID_PARAM ETER	

### 7.1.21.8.3.2 When generated

The MAC layer shall generate MLME-ACTIVATE.confirm to acknowledge that it received MLME-ACTIVATE.request.

### 7.1.21.8.3.3 Effect on receipt

## 7.1.21.9 MLME-DISCONNECT

### 7.1.21.9.1 MLME-DISCONNECT.request

#### 7.1.21.9.1.1 Semantics

The semantics of the MLME-DISCONNECT.request primitive is as follows:

```
MLME-DISCONNECT.request      (
    )
```

#### 7.1.21.9.1.2 When generated

MLME-DISCONNECT.request primitive is used to initiate the graceful disconnection from PA-network.

#### 7.1.21.9.1.3 Effect on receipt

Upon receipt of the request, the MAC layer shall send a disassociation notification command frame or a data frame containing a higher layer management packet to indicate that it is about to leave the PA-network on all unicast transmit links. The Sequence Number subfield of the MHR of the frame shall be set to the least significant byte of the absolute slot number.

After the MAC sends the disassociation notification command frame for *macDisconnectTime*, it shall release all slotframe and link resources.

### 7.1.21.9.2 MLME-DISCONNECT.indication

#### 7.1.21.9.2.1 Semantics

The semantics of the MLME-DISCONNECT.indication primitive is as follows:

```
MLME-DISCONNECT.indication  (
    srcAddress,
```

1 )  
 2 Table 120.aa specifies parameters for the MLME-DISCONNECT.indication primitive.

3 **Table 120.aa—MLME-DISCONNECT.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
srcAddr	Integer	0x0000 – 0xFFFF	16-bit short address of the neighbor node from which the DISCONNECT command frame was received.

4  
 5 **7.1.21.9.2.2 When generated**

6 MLME-DISCONNECT.indication indicates to the device management layer that the MAC layer has  
 7 received a Disconnect command frame from a neighbor node, the address of which is indicated by  
 8 srcAddress.

9 **7.1.21.9.2.3 Effect on receipt**

10 Upon receipt of the MLME-DISCONNECT.indication, the device management layer shall process the  
 11 disconnection of the neighbor from which the Disconnect command frame is received. Resolution between  
 12 the short form srcAddr and its long form address (8 octets) may be needed for security purposes. This is  
 13 determined by NHL (next higher layer).

14 **7.1.21.9.3 MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm**

15 **7.1.21.9.3.1 Semantics**

16 The semantics of the MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm primitive is as follows:

17 MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm (   
 18 status   
 19 )

20 Table 120.bb specifies parameters for the MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm primitive.

21 **Table 120.bb—MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS	

22  
 23 **7.1.21.9.3.2 When generated**

24 The MAC layer shall generate MLME-DISCONNECT.confirm to acknowledge that it received MLME-  
 25 DISCONNECT request.

26 **7.1.21.9.3.3 Effect on receipt**

27 None.

28 **7.1.22 LL-specific MAC sublayer service specification**

29 (tbd) Subclauses without text will be filled up later on.

30

## 1 **7.1.22.1 Primitives for Superframe Configuration of low latency networks**

### 2 **7.1.22.1.1 General**

3 These primitives control the different modes for the configuration and operation of the superframe in a low  
4 latency network.

### 5 **7.1.22.1.2 MLME-LL\_NW.discovery**

#### 6 **7.1.22.1.2.1 General**

7 This primitive switches the LL-network into discover mode.

#### 8 **7.1.22.1.2.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive**

9 The semantics of the MLME-LL\_NW.discovery primitive is as follows:

```
10
11 MLME-LL_NW.discovery (
12     ...
13 )
```

14 Table ??? specifies the parameters for the MLME-LL\_NW.discovery primitive.

15 **LL: tbd: Parameter and Table xxx will be defined by technology provider.**

#### 16 **7.1.22.1.2.3 When generated**

#### 17 **7.1.22.1.2.4 Appropriate usage**

### 18 **7.1.22.1.3 MLME-LL\_NW.discovery\_confirm**

#### 19 **7.1.22.1.3.1 General**

20 This primitive indicates the end of the discover mode and gives the status of the discover mode to the next  
21 higher layer.

#### 22 **7.1.22.1.3.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive**

23 The semantics of the MLME-LL\_NW.discovery\_confirm primitive is as follows:

```
24 MLME-LL_NW.discovery_confirm (
25     ...
26 )
```

27 Table ??? specifies the parameters for the MLME-LL\_NW.discovery\_confirm primitive.

28 **LL: tbd: Parameter and Table xxx will be defined by technology provider.**

#### 29 **7.1.22.1.3.3 When generated**

30

1 **7.1.22.1.3.4 Appropriate usage**

2

3 **7.1.22.1.4 MLME-LL\_NW.configuration**

4 **7.1.22.1.4.1 General**

5 This primitive switches the LL-network into configuration mode.

6 **7.1.22.1.4.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive**

7 The semantics of the MLME-LL\_NW.configuration primitive is as follows:

8

9 MLME-LL\_NW.configuration (

10

...

11

)

12

Table ??? specifies the parameters for the MLME-LL\_NW.configuration primitive.

13

**LL: tbd: Parameter and Table xxx will be defined by technology provider.**

14

**7.1.22.1.4.3 When generated**

15

**7.1.22.1.4.4 Appropriate usage**

16

**7.1.22.1.5 MLME-LL\_NW.configuration\_confirm**

17

**7.1.22.1.5.1 General**

18

This primitive indicates the end of the configuration mode and gives the status of the configuration mode to the next higher layer.

19

20

**7.1.22.1.5.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive**

21

The semantics of the MLME-LL\_NW.configuration\_confirm primitive is as follows:

22

MLME-LL\_NW.configuration\_confirm (

23

...

24

)

25

Table ??? specifies the parameters for the MLME-LL\_NW.configuration\_confirm primitive.

26

**LL: tbd: Parameter and Table xxx will be defined by technology provider.**

1 **7.1.22.1.5.3 When generated**

2 **7.1.22.1.5.4 Appropriate usage**

3 **7.1.22.1.6 MLME-LL\_NW.online**

4 **7.1.22.1.6.1 General**

5 This primitive switches the LL-network into online mode.

6 **7.1.22.1.6.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive**

7 The semantics of the MLME-LL\_NW.online primitive is as follows:

8 MLME-LL\_NW.online (  
9 ...  
10 )

11 Table ??? specifies the parameters for the MLME-LL\_NW.online primitive.

12 **LL: tbd: Parameter and Table xxx will be defined by technology provider.**

13 **7.1.22.1.6.3 When generated**

14 **7.1.22.1.6.4 Appropriate usage**

15 **7.1.22.1.7 MLME-LL\_NW.online\_indication**

16 **7.1.22.1.7.1 General**

17 This primitive indicates any problems during the online mode to the next higher layer.

18 **7.1.22.1.7.2 Semantics of the Service Primitive**

19 The semantics of the MLME-LL\_NW.online\_indication primitive is as follows:

20 MLME-LL\_NW.online\_indication (  
21 ...  
22 )

23 Table ??? specifies the parameters for the MLME-LL\_NW.online\_indication primitive.

24 **LL: tbd: Parameter and Table xxx will be defined by technology provider.**

25 **7.1.22.1.7.3 When generated**

26 **7.1.22.1.7.4 Appropriate usage**

27



## 1 7.1.23 CM-specific MAC sublayer service specification

### 2 7.1.23.1 MLME-EGTS

#### 3 7.1.23.1.1 General

4 These EGTS management primitives are optional and extent the MLME-SAP GTS management primitives  
5 specified in 7.1.7. A device wishing to use these EGTS primitives and GTSs in general will already be  
6 tracking the beacons of its PAN coordinator.

#### 7 7.1.23.1.2 MLME-EGTS.request

##### 8 7.1.23.1.2.1 General

9 The MLME-GTS.request (see 7.1.7.1) and MLME-EGTS.request primitive allow a device to send a request  
10 to the PAN coordinator to allocate a new GTS slot or to the Destination device to allocate a new GTS or  
11 EGTS slot. This primitive is also used to deallocate GTS or EGTS.

12 If the value of the EGTSFlag in this primitive is set to '1', the MLME-GTS.request primitive allows a  
13 Source device to send a request to a Destination device to allocate a new EGTS, or to deallocate / reallocate /  
14 change an existing EGTS. This primitive is also used by a Destination device to initiate an EGTS  
15 deallocation, reallocation, or change (reduce or restart).

##### 16 7.1.23.1.2.2 Semantics

17 The semantics of the MLME- EGTS.request primitive is as follows:

```
18 MLME-EGTS.request (
19     GTSCharacteristics,
20     SecurityLevel,
21     KeyIdMode,
22     KeySource,
23     KeyIndex,
24     EGTSCharacteristics,
25     EGTSFlag
26 )
```

27 Table 120.cc specifies the parameters for the MLME-EGTS.request primitive.

1

**Table 120.cc— MLME-EGTS.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
GTSCharacteristics,	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
SecurityLevel,	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
KeyIdMode,	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
KeySource,	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
KeyIndex	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
EGTSFlag	Boolean	TRUE or FALSE	If this value is FALSE, the operation of this primitive is the same way defined in 7.1.7.1. If this value is TRUE, the operation of this primitive is for the EGTS mode specified in 7.1.23.1.2.
EGTSCharacteristics	EGTSCharacteristics	See 7.3.10.2	The characteristics of the EGTS request, including whether the request is for the allocation of a new EGTS or the deallocation / reallocation / change of an existing GTS.

2

**3 7.1.23.1.2.3 When generated**

4 The MLME-EGTS.request primitive can also be generated by the next higher layer of a Source device and  
5 issued to its MLME to request the allocation of a new EGTS or to request the deallocation / reallocation /  
6 change of an existing EGTS. It is also generated by the next higher layer of the Destination device and  
7 issued to its MLME to request the deallocation, reallocation, or change of an existing EGTS.

**8 7.1.23.1.2.4 Effect on receipt**

9 If the value of the EGTSFlag in this primitive equals to '0', the effect of MLME-EGTS.request is the same  
10 as it is described in 7.1.7.1. If the value of the EGTSFlag is set to '1', the effect of MLME-EGTS.request is  
11 as follows.

12 On receipt of the MLME-EGTS.request primitive for EGTS allocation, the MLME of the Source device  
13 attempts to generate an EGTS handshake command frame(see 7.3.10.2) with the Characteristics Type  
14 subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field set to one (EGTS allocation), the EGTS Handshake Type subfield  
15 set to zero (EGTS request). Then the MLME of the Source device will send it to the Destination device.

16 If macShortAddress is equal to 0xffff or 0xffff, the Source device is not permitted to request an EGTS  
17 allocation. In this case, the MLME issues the MLME-EGTS.confirm primitive containing a status of  
18 NO\_SHORT\_ADDRESS.

19 If the SecurityLevel parameter is set to a valid value other than 0x00, indicating that security is required for  
20 this frame, the MLME will set the Security Enabled subfield of the Frame Control field to one. The MAC  
21 sublayer will perform outgoing processing on the frame based on the DstAddress, SecurityLevel,  
22 KeyIdMode, KeySource, and KeyIndex parameters, as described in 7.5.8.2.1. If any error occurs during  
23 outgoing frame processing, the MLME will discard the frame and issue the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive  
24 with the error status returned by outgoing frame processing.

25 If the EGTS handshake request command frame cannot be sent due to the channel condition, the MLME will  
26 issue the MLME-EGTS.confirm primitive with a status of CHANNEL\_ACCESS\_FAILURE.

27 If the MLME successfully transmits an EGTS handshake command, the MLME will expect an  
28 acknowledgment in return. If an acknowledgment is not received, the MLME will issue the MLME-  
29 GTS.confirm primitive with a status of NO\_ACK (see 7.5.6.4).

30 If the EGTS request command frame is being sent (see 7.5.10.1), the source device will wait for at most an  
31 EGTSRequestWaitingTime symbols, if no EGTS handshake reply command frame from the destination  
32 device appears within this time, the MLME of the source device shall notify the next higher layer of the  
33 failure by the MLME-EGTS.confirm primitive with a status of NO\_DATA.

34 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS allocation request, the Destination  
35 device shall first check if there is available capacity in the current multi-superframe. When the Destination  
36 device determines whether capacity is available for the requested EGTS, it shall generate an EGTS

36

- 1 descriptor (see 7.3.10.2) with the requested specifications and the 16-bit short address of the requesting  
2 source device.
- 3 If the MLME of the Destination device can allocate the requested EGTS, it will set the EGTS Slot Identifier  
4 subfield in the EGTS descriptor to the multi-superframe slot at which the allocated EGTS begins from, the  
5 length in the EGTS descriptor to the length of the EGTS and the Device short address to the address of the  
6 source device. In addition, the destination device shall issue the MLME-EGTS.indication primitive with the  
7 characteristics of the allocated EGTS and the EGTSFlag set to TRUE to notify the next higher layer of the  
8 newly allocated EGTS. If the MLME of the Destination device cannot allocate the requested EGTS, the  
9 EGTS Slot Identifier shall be set to zero and the EGTS length set to the largest EGTS length that can  
10 currently be supported.
- 11 The Destination device shall then include the EGTS descriptor in its EGTS handshake command frame and  
12 broadcast it to its one-hop neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field  
13 shall be set to one (EGTS allocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to one (EGTS reply).
- 14 On receipt of the EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS allocation reply, the device shall  
15 process the EGTS descriptor.
- 16 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor does not correspond to  
17 macShortAddress of the device, the device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's newly allocated EGTS.  
18 If the newly allocated EGTS is conflicting with the device's known EGTS, the device shall send an EGTS  
19 handshake command frame to the origin device of the EGTS handshake reply command frame. The  
20 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field set to three (EGTS duplicate allocation  
21 notification) and the Handshake Type subfield set to two (EGTS notify), with the EGTS Slot Identifier  
22 subfield in the EGTS descriptor set to the multi-superframe slot at which the EGTS duplicate allocated, the  
23 length in the EGTS descriptor to the length of the duplicate allocated EGTS and the Device short address to  
24 the address of the device for which the EGTS allocation replied.
- 25 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor corresponds to macShortAddress  
26 of the device, the MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of whether the EGTS  
27 allocation request was successful by the primitive MLME-GTS.confirm, with a status of SUCCESS (if the  
28 EGTS Slot Identifier in the EGTS descriptor was greater than zero) or DENIED (if the EGTS Slot Identifier  
29 in the EGTS descriptor was equal to zero or if the length did not match the requested length).
- 30 After that, the Source device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake command frame to all its one-hop  
31 neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to one (EGTS  
32 allocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (EGTS notify).
- 33 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS allocation notify, the device shall  
34 process the EGTS descriptor. The device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's newly allocated EGTS. If  
35 the newly allocated EGTS conflicts with the device's known EGTS, the device shall send an EGTS  
36 handshake command frame to the origin device of the EGTS handshake notify command frame. The  
37 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to three (EGTS duplicate  
38 allocation notification) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (EGTS notify), with the Device  
39 short address to the address of the device which sent the EGTS allocation notify.
- 40 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS duplicate allocation notification, the  
41 MLME shall notify the next higher layer of the conflicts by the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with the  
42 EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the Characteristics Type subfield set to three and the EGTSCharacteristics set to the  
43 characteristics of the duplicate allocation EGTS.
- 44 If the EGTS request is to deallocate an existing EGTS (see 7.5.7.4), on receipt of the MLME-EGTS.request  
45 primitive, the MLME shall send the EGTS handshake command (see 7.3.10) to the corresponding device  
46 (the Source or Destination of which the EGTS to be deallocated), with the Characteristics Type subfield of  
47 the EGTS Characteristics field set to zero (EGTS deallocation), the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to  
48 zero (EGTS request), and the EGTS Length of the EGTSDescriptor subfields shall be set according to the  
49 characteristics of the EGTS to deallocate.
- 50 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS deallocation request, the device shall  
51 attempt to deallocate the EGTS.
- 52 If the EGTS characteristics contained in the command do not match the characteristics of a known EGTS,  
53 the device shall ignore the request.

1 If the EGTS characteristics contained in the EGTS request command match the characteristics of a known  
 2 EGTS, the MLME of the device shall deallocate the specified EGTS, update its ABT and notify the next  
 3 higher layer of the change by the primitive MLME-GTS.indication with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the  
 4 EGTS Characteristics parameter containing the characteristics of the deallocated EGTS and the  
 5 Characteristics Type subfield set to zero (EGTS deallocation).

6 Then, the device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake command to its one-hop neighbors. The Characteristics  
 7 Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field of the EGTS handshake command shall be set to zero  
 8 (EGTS deallocation), and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to one (EGTS reply).

9 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command indicating an EGTS deallocation reply, the device shall process  
 10 the EGTS descriptor. If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor does not  
 11 correspond to macShortAddress of the device, the device updates its ABT to reflect all the neighbor's  
 12 deallocated EGTS. If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor corresponds  
 13 to macShortAddress of the device, the MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of  
 14 whether the EGTS deallocation request was successful by the primitive MLME-GTS.confirm primitive with  
 15 a status of SUCCESS (if the length in the EGTS descriptor matched the requested deallocation length) or  
 16 DENIED (if the length in the EGTS descriptor did not match the requested deallocation length).

17 Then, the device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake command to all its one-hop neighbors. The  
 18 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to zero (EGTS deallocation) and  
 19 the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (Notify).

20 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command indicating an EGTS deallocation notify, the device shall  
 21 process the EGTS descriptor and update its ABT to reflect the neighbor's deallocated EGTS.

22 If Destination device request to change an allocated EGTS of the Source device and the request has been  
 23 acknowledged by the Source device, the Destination device will issue the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive  
 24 with a status of SUCCESS, the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the EGTSCharacteristics Type subfield of the  
 25 EGTSCharacteristics parameter set to 101 for EGTS reduce or 110 for EGTS restart accordingly, and other  
 26 subfields set according to the characteristics of the EGTS which the Destination device requests the Source  
 27 device to change its original EGTS to.

28 On receipt of an EGTS handshake request command for EGTS change from the destination device, the  
 29 Source device will acknowledge the frame and immediately change the EGTS. Then the MLME of the  
 30 Source device will issue the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with an EGTSCharacteristics parameter set  
 31 according to the characteristics of the EGTS which the Destination device requests the Source device to  
 32 change its original EGTS to.

33 If any parameter in the MLME-EGTS.request primitive is not supported or is out of range, the MLME will  
 34 issue the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive with a status of INVALID\_PARAMETER.

35 When EGTSFlag is TRUE, two types of channel diversity, channel adaptation and channel hopping, can be  
 36 employed to allocate EGTS slots. Both channel diversity modes allocate EGTS slots via EGTS handshake  
 37 command. To exchange channel and EGTS slot usage between devices, channel adaptation uses EGTS  
 38 allocation bitmap table (ABT), while channel hopping uses EGTS timeslot allocation bitmap (TAB).  
 39 Detailed procedures for allocating and deallocating EGTS slots in two channel diversity modes are explained  
 40 in 7.5.10.1 and 7.5.10.7.

#### 41 **7.1.23.1.3 MLME-EGTS.confirm**

##### 42 **7.1.23.1.3.1 General**

43 If the value of the EGTSFlag equals to '1', the MLME-EGTS.confirm primitive reports the results of a  
 44 request to allocate a new EGTS or to deallocate / reallocate / change an existing GTS.

##### 45 **7.1.23.1.3.2 Semantics**

46 The semantics of the MLME-EGTS.confirm primitive is as follows:

1 MLME-GTS.confirm (

2 GTSCharacteristics,

3 status,

4 EGTSFlag,

5 EGTSCharacteristics

6 )

7 Table 120.dd specifies the parameters for the MLME-EGTS.request primitive.

8 **Table 120.dd— MLME-EGTS.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
GTSCharacteristics,	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
status	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
EGTSFlag	Boolean	TRUE or FALSE	If this value is FALSE, the operation of this primitive is the same way defined in 7.1.7.1. If this value is TRUE, the operation of this primitive is for the EGTS mode specified in 7.1.23.1.2.
EGTSCharacteristics	EGTSCharacteristics	See 7.3.10.2	The characteristics of the EGTS confirm, including whether the confirm is for the allocation of a new EGTS or the deallocation / reallocation / change of an existing GTS.

9

#### 10 **7.1.23.1.3.3 When generated**

11 If the request to allocate, deallocate, reallocate, or change (reduce or restart) an EGTS was successful, this

12 primitive will return a status of SUCCESS with the EGTSFlag set to '1' and the EGTSCharacteristics Type

13 subfield of the EGTSCharacteristics parameter set accordingly. Otherwise, the status parameter will indicate

14 the appropriate error code. The reasons for these status values are fully described in 7.1.7.1.3 and subclauses

15 referenced by 7.1.7.1.3.

#### 16 **7.1.23.1.3.4 Effect on receipt**

17 On receipt of the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive with the value of the EGTSFlag set to '1', the next higher

18 layer is notified of the result of its request to allocate, deallocate, or change an EGTS. If the request was

19 successful, the status parameter will indicate a successful EGTS operation, and the MLME of the device will

20 generate an EGTS handshake command frame with the Handshake Type subfield set to two (EGTS notify)

21 and the information contained in the EGTSCharacteristics parameter in this primitive. Otherwise, the status

22 parameter will indicate the error.

#### 23 **7.1.23.1.4 MLME-EGTS.indication**

##### 24 **7.1.23.1.4.1 General**

25 If the value of the EGTSFlag equals to '1', the MLME-EGTS.indication primitive reports the results of a

26 request to allocate a new EGTS or to deallocate / reallocate / change an existing GTS.

##### 27 **7.1.23.1.4.2 Semantics**

28 The semantics of the MLME-EGTS.indication primitive is as follows:

1 MLME-GTS.indication (

2 DeviceAddress,

3 GTSCharacteristics,

4 SecurityLevel,

5 KeyIdMode,

6 KeySource,

7 KeyIndex,

8 EGTSFlag,

9 EGTSCharacteristics

10 )

11 Table 120.dd specifies the parameters for the MLME-EGTS.request primitive.

12 **Table 120.ee— MLME-EGTS.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
GTSCharacteristics,	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
status	Table 94	Table 94	See Table 94
EGTSFlag	Boolean	TRUE or FALSE	If this value is FALSE, the operation of this primitive is the same way defined in 7.1.7.1. If this value is TRUE, the operation of this primitive is for the EGTS mode specified in 7.1.23.1.2.
EGTSCharacteristics	EGTSCharacteristics	See 7.3.10.2	The characteristics of the EGTS indication, including whether the indication is for the allocation of a new EGTS or the deallocation / reallocation / change of an existing GTS.

13

14 **7.1.23.1.4.3 When generated**

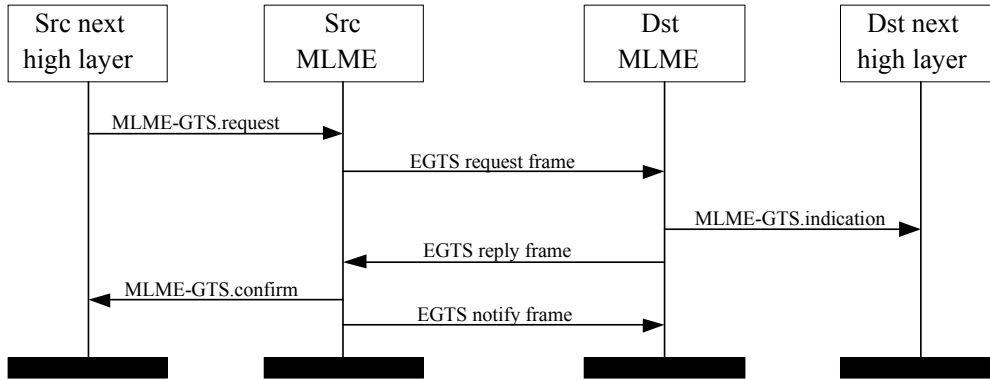
15 This primitive is generated by the MLME of a Source or Destination device and issued to its next higher  
16 layer when an EGTS is allocated, deallocated, reallocated, or changed following the reception of an EGTS  
17 handshake command (see 7.3.10). The EGTS Characteristics type subfield of the EGTSCharacteristics  
18 parameter is set accordingly.

19 **7.1.23.1.4.4 Effect on receipt**

20 On receipt of the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with the value of the EGTS flag in the  
21 EGTSCharacteristics field set to '1', the next higher layer is notified of the allocation, deallocation,  
22 reallocation, or change of an EGTS.

23 **7.1.23.1.5 EGTS management message sequence charts**

24 Figure 79.a and Figure 79.b illustrate the sequence of messages necessary for successful EGTS management.  
25 Figure 79.a depicts the message flow for the case in which a Source device initiates the EGTS allocation,  
26 deallocation, reallocation, or change. Figure 79.b depicts the message flow for the case in which a  
27 Destination device initiates the EGTS deallocation, reallocation, or change.

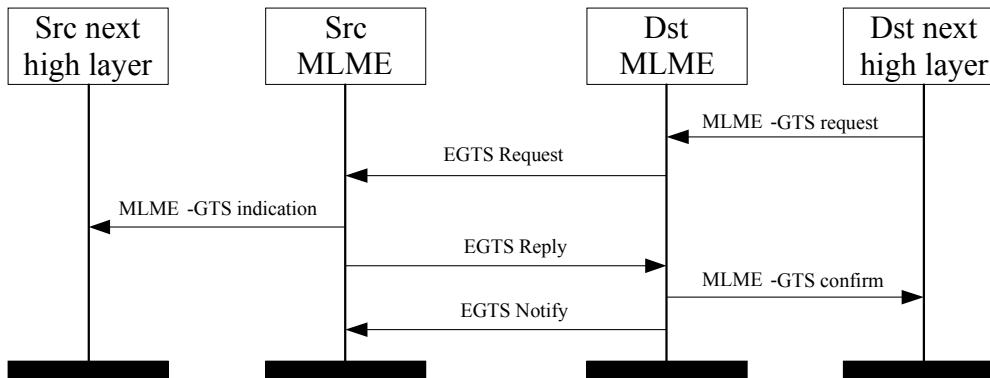


1

2

**Figure 79.a—Message sequence chart for EGTS allocation initiated by a Source device**

3



4

5

**Figure 79.b—Message sequence chart for EGTS allocation initiated by a Destination device**

6

## 7.1.23.2 MLME-CM-START

7

### 7.1.23.2.1 General

8 The MLME-EGTS.request primitive (see also 7.1.7.1) allows a device to send a request to the PAN  
 9 coordinator to allocate a new EGTS slot or to the Destination CM-device to allocate a new EGTS slot. This  
 10 primitive shall also be used to deallocate GTS or EGTS.

### 7.1.23.2.2 MLME-CM-START.request

#### 7.1.23.2.2.1 General

13 If the value of the EGTSFlag in this primitive is set to '1', the MLME-GTS.request primitive allows a  
 14 Source device to send a request to a Destination device to allocate a new EGTS, or to deallocate / reallocate /  
 15 change an existing EGTS. This primitive is also used by a Destination device to initiate an EGTS  
 16 deallocation, reallocation, or change (suspend, or restart).

#### 7.1.23.2.2.2 Semantics

18 The semantics of the MLME-CM-START.request primitive is as follows:

```
1      MLME-CM-START.request (  
2          PANId,  
3          LogicalChannel,  
4          ChannelPage,  
5          SuperframeStartBank,  
6          BeaconOrder,  
7          SuperframeOrder,  
8          PANCoordinator,  
9          BatteryLifeExtension,  
10         CoorRealignement,  
11         CoorRealignSecurityLevel,  
12         CoorRealignKeyIdMode,  
13         CoorRealignKeySource,  
14         CoorRealignKeyIndex,  
15         BeaconSecurityLevel,  
16         BeaconKeyIdMode,  
17         BeaconKeySource,  
18         BeaconKeyIndex,  
19         EGTSFlag,  
20         EGTSSuperframeSpecification,  
21         DCHDescriptor  
22     )
```

23 Table 120.ff specifies the parameters for the MLME-CM-START.request primitive.



1

**Table 120.ff—MLME-CM-START.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
PANId,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
LogicalChannel,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
ChannelPage,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
SuperframeStartBank,	Integer	0x00 – 0x1F	In superframe bank , the coordinator transmits its own beacon frame. If this parameter is set to 0x00, beacon transmitting will begin immediately. Otherwise, the specified bank number is relative to the bank index of the received beacon with which the device synchronizes. This parameter shall be ignored if either the BeaconOrder parameter has a value of 15 or the PANCoordinator parameter is TRUE.
BeaconOrder,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
SuperframeOrder,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
PANCoordinator,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
BatteryLifeExtension,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
CoorRealignmnet,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
CoorRealignSecurityLevel,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
CoorRealignKeyIdMode,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
CoorRealignKeySource,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
CoorRealignKeyIndex,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
BeaconSecurityLevel,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
BeaconKeyIdMode,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
BeaconKeySource,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
BeaconKeyIndex,	Table 108	Table 108	See Table 108
EGTSFlag,	Boolean	TRUE or FALSE	If this value is FALSE, the operation of this primitive is the same way defined in 7.1.7.1. If this value is TRUE, the operation of this primitive is for the EGTS mode specified in 7.1.23.1.2.
EGTSSuperframeSpecification,	EGTSSuperframeSpecification Value	See 7.2.2.1.9	The EGTS superframe specification.
DCHDescriptor	DCHDescriptor Value	See Table 120.gg	The DCHDescriptor for the received beacon.

2

3

**Table 120.gg—Elements of DCHDescriptor**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
ChannelHoppingSequenceLength	Integer	0-255	Specifies the length of ChannelHoppingSequence.
ChannelHoppingSequence	Set of Octets	-	Specifies the sequence of logical channel numbers, which is set by the next higher layer. PAN coordinator shall select the sequence to use when it establishes a PAN.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0-255	Specifies the offset value of ChannelHoppingSequence.
ChannelOffsetBitmapLength	Integer	0-255	Specifies the length of ChannelOffsetBitmap.
ChannelOffsetBitmap	Set of Octets	-	Bit value of ChannelOffsetBitmap sequence represents whether the corresponding channel offset is used. If the corresponding channel offset is used, the bit value shall be set to '1'. Otherwise, it shall be set to '0'. For instance, if the 1st, 2nd, 4th channels offset are used with ChannelOffsetBitmapLength of 16, ChannelOffsetBitmap shall be 0110100000000000.

4

1 **7.1.23.2.2.3 Appropriate usage**

2 See 7.1.14.1.2.

3 **7.1.23.2.2.4 Effect on receipt**

4 If the SuperframeStartBank parameter is non-zero and the MLME is not currently tracking the beacon of the  
 5 coordinator through which it is associated, the MLME will issue the MLME-START.confirm primitive with  
 6 a status of TRACKING\_OFF.

7 **7.1.23.3 MAC CM-data service**8 **7.1.23.3.1 General**

9 The MCPS-SAP supports the transport of SSCS protocol data units (SPDUs) between peer SSCS entities.  
 10 Table 120.hh lists the primitives supported by the CM-MCPS-SAP. Primitives marked with a diamond (♦)  
 11 are optional for an RFD. These primitives are discussed in the subclauses referenced in the table.

12 **Table 120.hh—MCPS-CM-SAP primitives**

Name	Request	Confirm	Indication
MCPS-DATA	7.1.1.1	7.1.1.2	7.1.1.3
MCPS-CM-DATA	7.1.23.2.1	7.1.1.2	7.1.1.3
MCPS-CM-PURGE	7.1.1.4♦	7.1.1.5♦	—

13

14 **7.1.23.3.2 MCPS-CM-DATA.request**

15 Subclause 7.1.1.1 applies. Subclause 7.1.1.1.1 applies except the definition of TxOptions in Table 77 shall  
 16 be replaced by Table 120.ii.

17 **Table 120.ii—MCPS-CM-DATA.request parameter TxOptions**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
TxOptions	Bitmap	5-bit field	The 5 bits (b0, b1, b2, b3, b4) indicate the transmission options for this MSDU. For b0, 1 = acknowledged transmission, 0 = unacknowledged transmission. For b1, 1 = GTS transmission, 0 = CAP transmission for a beacon-enabled PAN. For a non-beacon-enabled PAN, bit b1 should always be set to 0. For b2, 1 = indirect transmission, 0 = direct transmission. For b3, 1 = CAP/EGTS transmission, 0 = CAP/GTS transmission. For b4, 1 = High Priority transmission, 0 = Low Priority transmission.

18

19 **7.1.23.3.2.1 Appropriate usage**

20 Subclause 7.1.1.1.2 applies.

1 **7.1.23.3.2.2 Effect on receipt**

2 If the TxOptions parameter specifies that an EGTS transmission is required, the MAC sublayer will set the  
 3 EGTS flag in the EGTS Characteristics field to one, indicating the EGTS transmission, and determine  
 4 whether it has a valid EGTS (for EGTS usage rules, see 7.5.10). If a valid EGTS could not be found, the  
 5 MAC sublayer will issue the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive with a status of INVALID\_GTS. If a valid  
 6 EGTS was found, the MAC sublayer will defer, if necessary, until the EGTS.

7 **7.1.23.4 MLME-EGTSinfo**

8 **7.1.23.4.1 CM-Primitives for requesting EGTS information**

9 MLME-EGTSinfo defines how a device can request EGTS information. All CM-devices shall provide an  
 10 interface for these EGTS information request primitives.

11 **7.1.23.4.2 MLME-EGTSinfo.request**

12 **7.1.23.4.2.1 General**

13 The MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive allows a Source device to request the timestamp and the parameters  
 14 of its EGTS from the Destination device.

15 **7.1.23.4.2.2 Semantics**

16 The semantics of the MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive is as follows:

```

17 MLME-EGTSinfo.request (
18     DstAddrMode,
19     DstAddr,
20     SecurityLevel,
21     KeyIdMode,
22     KeySource,
23     KeyIndex
24 )

```

25 Table 120.jj specifies the parameters for the MLME-CM-START.request primitive.

1

**Table 120.jj—MLME-EGTSinfo.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
DstAddrMode	Integer	0x02–0x03	The addressing mode of the Destination device to which the request is intended. This parameter can take one of the following values: 0x02 = 16-bit short address, 0x03 = 64-bit extended address.
DstAddr	DeviceAddresses	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the Destination device to which the request is intended.
SecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level to be used (see Table 136 in 7.6.2.2.1).
KeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key to be used (see Table 96 in 7.6.2.2.2). This parameter is ignored if the SecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
KeySource	Set of 0, 4, or 8 octets	As specified by the KeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key to be used (see 7.6.2.4.1). This parameter is ignored if the KeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00.
KeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key to be used (see 7.6.2.4.2). This parameter is ignored if the KeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00.

2

**3 7.1.23.4.2.3 Appropriate usage**

4 The MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive is generated by the next higher layer of a Source device and issued  
5 to its MLME when the timestamp and the parameters of its EGTS are to be requested from the Destination  
6 device.

**7 7.1.23.4.2.4 Effect on receipt**

8 On receipt of the MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive by a device, the MLME of the device generates and  
9 sends an EGTS information request command (see 7.3.11). The EGTS information request command is  
10 generated with the destination address information in the DstAddress parameter.

11 If the SecurityLevel parameter is set to a valid value other than 0x00, indicating that security is required for  
12 this frame, the MLME will set the Security Enabled subfield of the Frame Control field to one. The MAC  
13 sublayer will perform outgoing processing on the frame based on the DstAddress, SecurityLevel,  
14 KeyIdMode, KeySource, and KeyIndex parameters, as described in 7.5.8.2.1. If any error occurs during  
15 outgoing frame processing, the MLME will discard the frame and issue the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm  
16 primitive with the error status returned by outgoing frame processing.

17 If the EGTS information request command cannot be sent due to a CSMA-CA algorithm failure, the MLME  
18 will issue the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive with a status of CHANNEL\_ACCESS\_FAILURE.

19 If the MLME successfully transmits an EGTS information request command, the MLME will expect an  
20 acknowledgment in return. If an acknowledgment is not received, the MLME will issue the MLME-  
21 EGTSinfo.confirm primitive with a status of NO\_ACK (see 7.5.6.4). If an acknowledgment is received, the  
22 MLME will wait for the EGTS information reply command.

23 If an EGTS information reply command is received from the Destination device, the MLME of the source  
24 device will issue the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive with a status of SUCCESS.

25 And if an EGTS information reply command is not received within macMaxFrameTotalWaitTime CAP  
26 symbols in a beacon-enabled PAN, or symbols in a non-beacon-enabled PAN, the MLME of the source  
27 device will issue the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive with a status of NO\_DATA.

28 If any parameter in the MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive is not supported or is out of range, the MLME  
29 will issue the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive with a status of INVALID\_PARAMETER.

### 1 7.1.23.4.3 MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm

#### 2 7.1.23.4.3.1 General

3 The MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive reports the results of a request for the timestamp and the EGTS  
4 parameters.

#### 5 7.1.23.4.3.2 Semantics

6 The semantics of the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive is as follows:

```
7 MLME-GTS.confirm (
8     EGTSCharacteristics,
9     Timestamp,
10    status
11    )
```

12 Table 120.dd specifies the parameters for the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive.

13 **Table 120.kk— MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
EGTSCharacteristics	EGTS Characteristics	See 7.3.10.2	The characteristics of the EGTS.
Timestamp	Integer	0x000000–0xfffff	The time, in symbols, at which the EGTS information reply command (see 7.3.11) was transmitted. This parameter will be considered valid only if the value of the status parameter is SUCCESS. The symbol boundary is described by macSyncSymbolOffset (see Table 127 in 7.4.2). This is a 24-bit value, and the precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_ACK, NO_DATA, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY or INVALID_PARAMETER.	The status of the EGTS information request.

14

#### 15 7.1.23.4.3.3 When generated

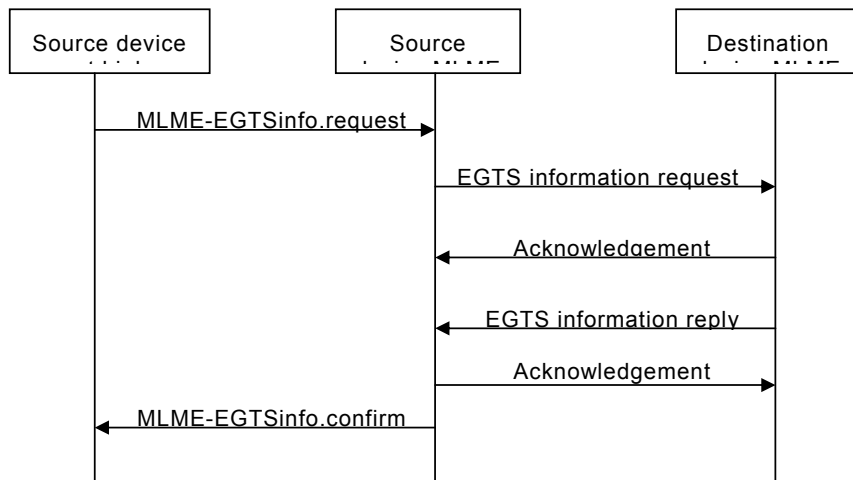
16 The MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in  
17 response to an MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive. If the request was successful, the status parameter will  
18 be equal to SUCCESS and the EGTS Characteristics Type field of the EGTSCharacteristics parameter will  
19 be set to Restart (see Table 3). Otherwise, the status parameter indicates the appropriate error code. The  
20 status values are fully described in 7.1.18.1.3.

#### 21 7.1.23.4.3.4 Appropriate usage

22 On receipt of the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive the next higher layer is notified of the result of the  
23 procedure to request the timestamp and the EGTS parameters from the Destination device.

1 **7.1.23.4.4 EGTS information sequence chart**

2 Figure 79.c illustrates the sequence of messages necessary for successful EGTS information  
 3 request. Figure 3 depicts the messages flow for the case in which the Source device  
 4 requests the timestamp and the EGTS parameters from the Destination device.



5  
6 **Figure 79.c—Message sequence chart for EGTS information request**

7  
8 **7.1.23.5 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT**

9 **7.1.23.5.1.1 General**

10 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT primitives define how a source device reports the communication  
 11 status between the source device and the destination device.

12 All CM-devices shall provide an interface for these link status report primitives.

13 **7.1.23.5.2 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request**

14 **7.1.23.5.2.1 General**

15 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request primitive is generated by the higher layer of a source device,  
 16 and is issued to its MLME to request a device start a link quality statistic and periodically report the statistic  
 17 results to the destination device.

18 **7.1.23.5.2.2 Semantics**

19 The semantics of the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request primitive is as follows:

20 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request (

21 DstAddr,

22 ReportPeriod

23 )

24 Table 120.11 specifies the parameters for the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request primitive.

1

**Table 120.II—MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
DstAddr	Integer	0-0xffff	16bit address of the Destination device to which the link status report request is intended.
ReportPeriod	Integer	0-0xfffff	Define the time interval of link status report command frame. (Liang: Dr. Wang, here is still unclear) Time interval between two link status report command frames is $ReportPeriod * aBaseSuperframeDuration * 2MO$ symbols If this parameter is equal to 0x000000, the link status report is to be disabled.

Comment [youcy1]: The precision of this value shall be indicated.

2

3 **7.1.23.5.2.3 Appropriate usage**

4 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request primitive is generated by the higher layer of a device, and  
 5 issued to its MLME to initiate a link status statistic.

6 **7.1.23.5.2.4 Effect on receipt**

7 On receipt of MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.request primitive by a device, the MLME of the device  
 8 attempts to generate a link status report command (see 7.3.14) with the information contained in this  
 9 primitive, and if successful, sends it to the destination device according to the DstAddress parameter.

10 If the link status report command frame cannot be sent due to a CSMA-CA algorithm failure, the MLME  
 11 will issue the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive with a status of  
 12 CHANNEL\_ACCESS\_FAILURE.

13 If the MLME successfully transmits a link status report command frame, the MLME will expect an  
 14 acknowledgement in return. If an acknowledgement is not received, the MLME will issue the MLME-CM-  
 15 LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive with a status of NO\_ACK.

16 If the link status report command frame has been acknowledged, the device will send another link status  
 17 report command frame again in the interval defined in the parameter ReportPeriod.

18 If a device received a link status report command frame from another device in the PAN, the destination  
 19 device will get the link status, and notify the result to its higher layer by the primitive MLME-CM-  
 20 LINKSTATUSRPT.indication.

21 **7.1.23.5.3 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm**

22 **7.1.23.5.3.1 General**

23 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive reports the results to start a link status report  
 24 process.

25 **7.1.23.5.3.2 Semantics**

26 The semantics of the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive is as follows:

```

27 MLME-GTS.confirm (
28     status
29 )
    
```

30 Table 120.mm specifies the parameters for the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive.

1

**Table 120.mm— MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_ACK or SUCCESS	The status of starting link status report.

2

**7.1.23.5.3.3 When generated**

4 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next  
5 higher layer in response to an MLME-LINKSATUSRPT.request primitive.

6 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive returns a status of either SUCCESS, indicating the  
7 MAC sublayer has started reporting its statistic results periodically, or the appropriate error code.

**7.1.23.5.3.4 Effect on receipt**

9 On receipt of the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.confirm primitive by a device, the next higher layer is  
10 notified of the result of its request to start reporting link status in the PAN. If the request was successful, the  
11 status parameter will indicate a successful link status report operation. Otherwise, the status parameter will  
12 indicate the error.

**7.1.23.5.4 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication****7.1.23.5.4.1 General**

15 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication primitive indicates the transfer of a link status report of a  
16 device from the MAC sublayer to the local next higher layer.

**7.1.23.5.4.2 Semantics**

18 The semantics of the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication primitive is as follows:

```
19 MLME-GTS.indication (
20     DstAddr,
21     LinkStatusSpecification
22 )
```

23 Table 120.nn specifies the parameters for the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication request primitive.

24

**Table 120.nn—MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
DstAddr	Integer	0-0xffff	16bit address of the Destination device to which the link status report request is intended.
LinkStatusSpecification	Link Status Specification	See 7.3.14	The link status specification.

25

**7.1.23.5.4.3 When generated**

27 The MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer and issued to  
28 the next higher layer on receipt of a link status report command.

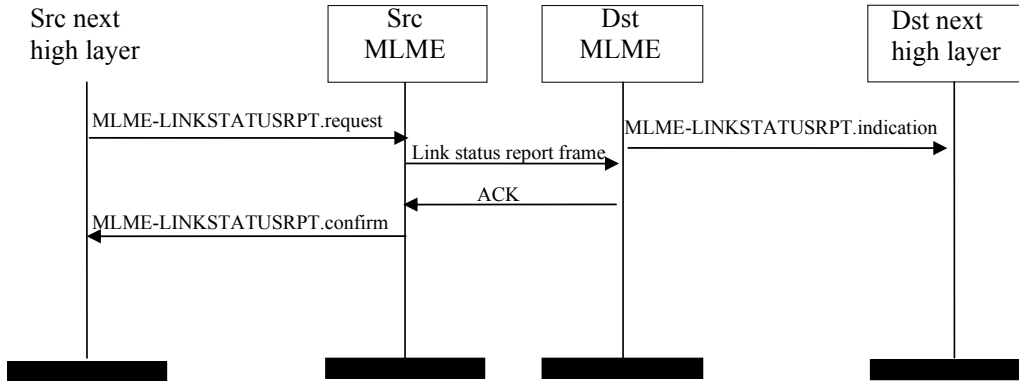


1 **7.1.23.5.4 Effect on receipt**

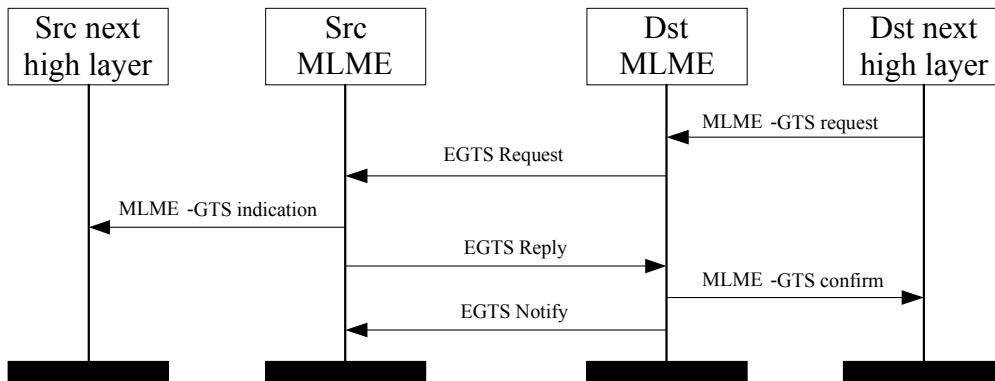
2 On receipt of the MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT.indication primitive, the next higher layer is notified of  
 3 the arrival of a link status report command frame from a CM-device. The usage of the link status report by  
 4 the next higher layer is beyond the scope of this document.

5 **7.1.23.5.5 MLME-CM-LINKSTATUSRPT message sequence charts**

6 Figure 79.d illustrates the sequence of messages necessary for link status report initialized by a source device  
 7 and Figure 79.e for destination device.



8  
 9 **Figure 79.d—Message sequence chart for link status report**



10  
 11  
 12 **Figure 79.e—Message sequence chart for EGTS allocation initiated by a Destination device**

13 **7.1.23.6 CM-Beacon notification primitive**

14 **7.1.23.6.1 General**

15 The MLME-SAP CM-Beacon Notification primitive defines how a device may be notified when a beacon is  
 16 received during normal operating conditions.

17 All CM-devices shall provide an interface for the beacon notification primitive.

18 **7.1.23.6.2 MLME-CM-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication**

19 7.1.5.1 applies except Table 91 shall be amended by Table 120.oo.

1

**Table 120.oo—Additional elements of CM-PANDescriptor**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
EGTSSuperframeSpec	Bitmap	See 7.2.2.1.2	The EGTS superframe specification as specified in the received beacon frame.
BeaconBitmap	Bitmap	See 7.2.2.1.2	Indicates the beacon frame allocation information of neighbor nodes.

2

3 **7.1.23.7 CM-Primitives for channel scanning**4 **7.1.23.7.1 General**5 MLME-SAP CM-scan primitives define how a CM-device can determine the energy usage or the presence  
6 or absence of PANs in a communications channel.

7 All CM-devices shall provide an interface for these scan primitives.

8 **7.1.23.7.2 MLME-CM-SCAN.request**9 **7.1.23.7.2.1 General**

10 7.1.11.1 applies.

11 **7.1.23.7.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive**12 7.1.11.1.1 applies except the parameter ScanType in Table 103 shall be amended for the coding 0x04 and  
13 0x05, see Table 120.pp.

14

**Table 120.pp—Additional elements of MLME-CM-SCAN.request parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
ScanType	Integer	0x00–0x05	Indicates the type of scan performed: 0x00 = see Table 103. 0x01 = see Table 103. 0x02 = see Table 103. 0x03 = see Table 103. 0x04 = asymmetric multi-channel active scan. 0x05 = channel probe.

15

16 **7.1.23.7.2.3 Appropriate usage**17 This primitive can be used to perform an ED scan to determine channel usage, an active or passive scan to  
18 locate beacon frames containing any PAN identifier, or an orphan scan to locate a PAN to which the device  
19 is currently associated, or an asymmetric multi-channel active scan to detect the best designated channel for  
20 the device, or a channel probe scan to probe other channels and choose a better channel to switch to.21 **7.1.23.7.2.4 Effect on receipt**22 The asymmetric multi-channel active scan is performed on each channel by the MLME first sending a multi-  
23 channel beacon request command (see 7.3.11). The MLME then enables the receiver and records the  
24 information contained in the received beacon in a PAN descriptor structure (see Table 91 and Table 120.oo).  
25 If the LinkQualityScan flag is FALSE, the asymmetric multi-channel active scan terminates when the device  
26 receives a beacon and then choose the current channel as its designated channel. Otherwise, if the  
27 LinkQualityScan flag is TRUE, the asymmetric multi-channel active scan on a particular channel terminates  
28 when [aBaseSuperframeDuration \* (2n + 1)] symbols, where n is the value of the ScanDuration parameter  
29 have elapsed after successful transmission of the multi-channel beacon request command, then switch to the

Comment [W2]: added this paragraph according to the description in 7.5.11.2, but I can't find the definition of "linkqualityscan", I think we should add it, in the PIB or just in the primitive.

52

1 next channel and repeat the same procedure. In this case, the whole asymmetric multi-channel active scan  
 2 terminates when the device have scanned every channel twice, and the device will choose its designated  
 3 channel according to the LQI or RSSI of the received beacons. See 7.5.11.2 for more detailed information on  
 4 the asymmetric multi-channel active scan.

5 The channel probe scan is performed on the channel specified by the ScanChannels parameter by the MLME  
 6 first sending a channel probe request frame (see 7.3.11) to one of its neighbors on the designated channel of  
 7 the neighbor. The MLME then switch to the device own designated channel and enables the receiver and  
 8 waits the channel probe reply frame. The channel probe scan terminates when [aBaseSuperframeDuration \*  
 9 (2n + 1)] symbols, where n is the value of the ScanDuration parameter have elapsed after successful  
 10 transmission of the channel probe request frame. The device shall check the LQI or RSSI of the channel  
 11 probe reply frame upon receiving it. See 7.5.11.4 for more detailed information on the channel probe scan.

12 The results of an asymmetric multi-channel active scan are reported to the next higher layer through the  
 13 MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. If the scan is successful and macAutoRequest is set to TRUE, the  
 14 primitive results will include a set of PAN descriptor values. If the scan is successful and macAutoRequest is  
 15 set to FALSE, the primitive results will contain a null set of PAN descriptor values, and each PAN descriptor  
 16 value will be sent individually to the next higher layer using separate MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY (see  
 17 7.1.5.1) primitives. In both cases, the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive will contain a list of unscanned  
 18 channels and a status of SUCCESS.

19 If, during an asymmetric multi-channel active scan, the MLME is unable to transmit a multi-channel beacon  
 20 request command on a channel specified by the ScanChannels parameter due to a channel access failure, the  
 21 channel will appear in the list of unscanned channels returned by the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. If the  
 22 MLME was able to send a multi-channel beacon request command on at least one of the channels but no  
 23 beacons were found, the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive will contain a null set of PAN descriptor values,  
 24 regardless of the value of macAutoRequest, and a status of NO\_BEACON.

25 The results of a channel probe scan are reported to the next higher layer through the MLME-SCAN.confirm  
 26 primitive. If the scan is successful the primitive results will include a status of SUCCESS.

27 If, during a channel probe scan, the MLME is unable to transmit a channel probe request frame on a channel  
 28 specified by the ScanChannels parameter due to a channel access failure, the channel will appear in the list  
 29 of unscanned channels returned by the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. If the MLME was able to send a  
 30 channel probe request frame but no channel probe reply was found, the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive  
 31 will contain a status of BAD\_CHANNEL.

32 **7.1.23.7.3 MLME-CM-SCAN.confirm**

33 **7.1.23.7.3.1 General**

34 7.1.11.2 applies.

35 **7.1.23.7.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

36 7.1.11.2.1 applies except the parameter status in Table 104 shall be amended with BAD\_CHANNEL, see  
 37 Table 120.qq.

38 **Table 120.qq—Additional element of MLME-CM-SCAN.confirm parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, LIMIT_REACHED, NO_BEACON, SCAN_IN_PROGRESS, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAM_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, BAD_CHANNEL or INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the scan request.

39  
 40 CM-technology provider: More description should be added here.

1 **7.1.24 LE-specific MAC sublayer service specification**

2 **7.1.24.1 General**

3 MLME-SAP FCS error primitive defines how a device may be notified when data frame is received with  
 4 error in the RIT mode.

5 This primitive is optional for a LE-device supporting RIT mode.

6 **7.1.24.2 MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication**

7 **7.1.24.2.1 General**

8 The MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication primitive is used to notify the reception of an erroneous data frame  
 9 by the MAC sublayer to the next higher layer.

10 **7.1.24.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

11 The semantics of the MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication primitive are as follows:

12 MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication(  
 13 status,  
 14 )

15 Table 120.rr specifies the parameters for the MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication primitive.

16 **Table 120.rr— MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication parameters**

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
status	Enumeration	FCS_ERROR, SECURITY_ERROR	The status of the erroneous reception of data frame in RIT mode

17

18 **7.1.24.2.3 When generated**

19 The MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication primitive is generated by MLME and issued to its next higher layer  
 20 upon reception of an erroneous data frame in RIT mode.

21 **7.1.24.2.4 Appropriate usage**

22 On receipt of the MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication primitive, the next higher layer is notified of the  
 23 reception of an erroneous data frame at the MAC sublayer.

24

25

26 **7.2 MAC frame formats**

27 **7.2.1 General MAC frame format**

28 *Change the first paragraph 7.2.1.*

29 The MAC frame format is composed of a MHR, a MAC payload, and a MFR. The fields of the MHR appear  
 30 in a fixed order; however, the addressing fields may not be included in all frames. Furthermore, some frame

1 types use a MHR of only 1 octet length with a shortened Frame Control field. The general MAC frame shall  
 2 be formatted as illustrated in Figure 79.

### 3 7.2.1.1 Frame Control field

#### 4 7.2.1.1.1 Frame Type subfield

5 *Change Table 120.*

Frame type value b2 b1 b0	Description
000	Beacon
001	Data
010	Acknowledgment
011	MAC command
<u>100</u>	<u>MHR of 1 octet (used by CM)</u>
<u>101</u>	<u>CSL Wakeup (used by LE)</u>
<u>110</u>	<u>Secure Acknowledgment (used by LE)</u>
<del>100-111</del>	Reserved

6

### 7 7.2.2 Format of individual frame types

#### 8 7.2.2.1 Beacon frame format

### 9 7.2.3 Frame compatibility

10 *Insert before 7.3 the following subclause.*

11 **The contribution from TSCH named “7.2 New Frame Formats” is not correct related**  
 12 **neither to IEEE 802.15.4-2006 nor to IEEE 802.15.4-2009 and have a lot of problems:**

13 **- The Table and Figure numbers are not related.**

14 **- The first sentence is an editor note and not a std paragraph.**

15 **- Figure 85 shall be a PPT or WORD editable figure.**

16 **- Table 109 is not similar to IEEE 802.15.4 MHR representations. It should be**  
 17 **according to Figure 92 or so.**

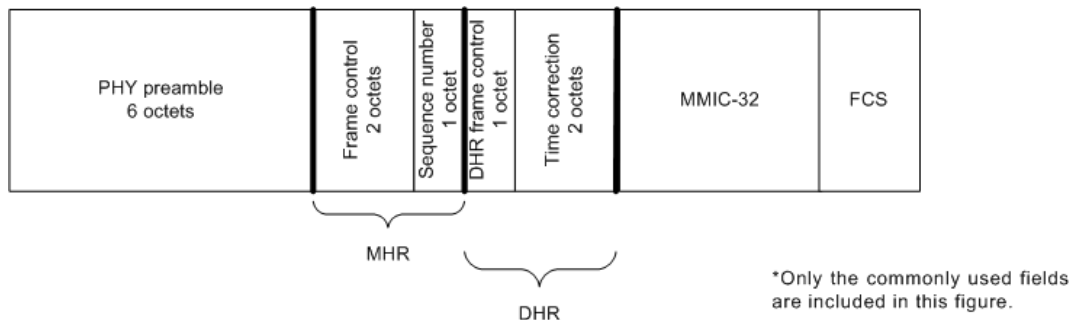
18 **- Table 110 is unclear.**

19

### 20 7.2.4 PA-Frame Formats

21 Secure Extended ACKs with payload is to be jointly defined with Security subgroup. ACK/NACK frame in  
 22 Figure 92.a is authenticate only/no payload and should be a subset of the Extended ACK definition.

1



2

**Figure 92.a—Typical acknowledgement frame layout**

3

The source address of an ACK/NACK is the address of the device that transmits the ACK/NACK. The destination address is the address of the intended recipient of the ACK/NACK.

4

5

Every ACK/NACK frame shall be authenticated with a MMIC, but not encrypted. Some fields are virtual, used in creating the MMIC but not actually transmitted.

6

7

The format of a MHR is summarized in Figure 92.b.

octets	bits							
	7	6	5	6	3	2	1	0
1	Frame control (octet 0)							
2	Frame control (octet 1)							
3	Sequence number							

8

**Figure 92.b—Acknowledgement frame MHR**

9

As shown in Figure 92.b, attributes include:

10

- Frame control attributes for ACK/NACKs, as follows:

11

- Frame type shall be data.

12

- Security shall be disabled, as it is handled in the DHR.

13

- Frame pending shall be false.

14

- Ack.Request shall be false (IEEE Std 802.15.4 does not recognize this as an ACK).

15

- Source addressing mode shall be 0x00 (i.e., implicit), except for cases described below where the source address and PAN ID are included in the MHR.

16

17

- Destination addressing mode shall be 0x00 (i.e., implicit).

18

- Frame version shall be 0x0+ 0x10.

19

- Sequence number shall be incremented after each use as described in 7.3.10.1.2.

20

The acknowledgers EUI-64 shall be included in the source address field of the ACK/NACKs MHR if so requested in the received DPDU's DHDR. Normally, the 16-bit DL source address of the ACK/NACK is not transmitted, because it matches the destination address of the received DPDU. However, in duo-cast or n-cast acknowledgements, one or more acknowledgements may be sent by different devices. Therefore, in cases where the acknowledger's address is different from the destination address of the received DPDU, the acknowledgement shall also include the acknowledger's 16-bit DL source address in the MHR, with the assumption that the acknowledger's EUI-64 is already known by the recipient of the acknowledgement. All correspondent devices must be operating within the same security context or they will not possess appropriate information to authenticate the frame.

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

A prototype DHR following a MHR is summarized in Figure 92.c.

octets	bits							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1 octet	DHR ACK/NACK Frame control							
4 octets (virtual)	Echoed MMIC of received DPDU							
0-2 octets	Time correction (LSB) When requested							
0-1 octets	Timeslot offset When needed							
0-4 octets	DAUX sub-header Usually absent							

**Figure 92.c—Acknowledgement frame DHR**

As shown in Figure 92.c, attributes include:

- The DHR ACK/NACK frame control octet is described in Figure 92.d.
- Echoed MMIC of received DPDU. For a discussion of handling of this virtual field, see 7.3.4. To unambiguously connect the ACK/NACK with the DPDU, the MMIC of the DPDU is included in the ACK/NACK's DHR as a virtual field, with octet ordering matching the DPDUs MMIC. This virtual field is used to calculate the ACK/NACK's MMIC, but not transmitted. If the received MMIC is longer than 4 octets, only the final 4 octets of the MMIC are echoed as a virtual field.
- Time correction (LSB). Used by DL clock sources to correct the time of the DL clock recipient, if it is requested in the received DPDU's DHDR. This 2-octet value, when included in the ACK/NACK, echoes the time that the DPDU was received. The value, in 2-20 s (approximately 0.954 μs), reports an offset from the scheduled start time of the current timeslot in the acknowledger's time base. The reported value is based on DPDU's start time. See 9.1.9.3.2

**PA: The ref 9.1.9.3.2 will be revised to a valid ref.**

- Acknowledger's timeslot offset is provided, when needed, within a slow hopping period. This one-octet value, when included in the NACK/ACK, indicates the current timeslot in the acknowledger's time base. It shall be included only when the received DPDU is received in a different slow hopping timeslot than is used for the acknowledgement. The first timeslot in a slow hopping period has an offset of zero. When the corrected timeslot offset is nonzero, the time correction (previous field), when included, shall be an offset of the corrected scheduled timeslot time, Security requires that a device's time increases from timeslot to timeslot. Therefore, if the timeslot is corrected to an earlier timeslot by a clock recipient, there shall be an interruption in service, equal to the magnitude of the timeslot correction plus at least one timeslot. See 9.1.9.4.9

**PA: The ref 9.1.9.4.9 will be revised to a valid ref.**

- Auxiliary sub-header (DAUX). DAUX may be included in an ACK/NACK, for the limited purpose of echoing received signal quality (see 9.3.5.5)

**PA: The ref 9.3.5.5 will be revised to a valid ref.**

In an ACK/NACK DPDU, the DHR frame control octet communicates the ACK/NACK selections, as shown in Figure 92.d.

octets	bits							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	Include clock correction  0= no 1= yes	Include slow-hopping timeslot offset  0= no 1= yes	ACK/NACK type  0= ACK 1=ACK/ECN 2= NACK0 3=NACK1	Auxiliary sub-header  0= no DAUX 1= DAUX included	MMIC alternative (LSB)  0= reserved 1= MMIC-32 2= MMIC-64 3= reserved	Reserved =0		

**Figure 92.d—DHR ACK/NACK frame control**

The DL protocol version number and MAC security key always match the received DPDU, and therefore are not indicated in the ACK/NACK.

1 Bit content is as follows:

- 2 • Bit 7 shall indicate whether the ACK/NACK includes clock correction information.
- 3 • Bit 6 shall indicate whether the ACK/NACK includes a slow hopping offset.
- 4 • Bits 5 and 4 shall indicate whether the PDU is an ACK or a NACK, as follows:
- 5 — 00 is an acknowledgement.
- 6 — 01 is an acknowledgement with an explicit congestion notification (ECN). See. A router that is
- 7 signaling ECN bits in the forward direction should also signal the ECN through DL
- 8 acknowledgements, if the priority of the DPDU is 7 or less. A device receiving an ECN through a
- 9 DL acknowledgement may treat this signal as early notification that it is likely to receive an ECN at
- 10 upper layers.
- 11 — 02 is a NACK0, signaling that the DPDU was received but could not be acknowledged due to
- 12 message queue congestion. See.9.1.9.4.4
- 13 — 03 is a NACK1, signaling that the DPDU was received but was not accepted due to recent history of
- 14 forwarding problems along the route. See .9.1.9.4.4
- 15 • Bit 3 shall indicate whether the ACK/NACK includes a DAUX sub-header. DAUX may
- 16 be included in an ACK/NACK for the limited purpose of reporting received signal
- 17 quality.
- 18 • Bits 2 and 1 shall indicate the MMIC alternative.
- 19 • Bit 0 is reserved and shall be set to 0.

## 20 7.2.5 LL-Frame Formats

### 21 7.2.5.1 General MAC Frame Format with MHR of 1 octet

#### 22 7.2.5.1.1 General

23 Subclause 7.2.5.1 describes the general MAC frame format that is used within a LL- network. A new frame

24 type is defined in Table X1. All other conformant frames can be also sent as long as they fit into the

25 available time slot.

26 The general structure of frame with a shortened frame control (MHR of 1 octet) is shown in Figure 92.e.

27

Octets: 1	variable	2
Shortend Frame Control	Frame Payload	FCS
MHR	MAC Payload	MFR

28

29

**Figure 92.e—General MAC frame format with shortened frame control field**

30

31

The MAC frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the Shortened Frame Control with the frame type, followed by the MAC payload and the MAC footer (MFR).

#### 32 7.2.5.1.2 Shortened Frame Control field

##### 33 7.2.5.1.2.1 General

34

35

The Shortened Frame Control field is 1 octet in length and contains information defining the frame type. The Shortened Frame Control Field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 92.f.



Bits: 0-2	3	4	5	6-7
Frame Type	Security Enabled	Frame Version	ACK Request	Sub Frame Type

**Figure 92.f—Format of the Shortened Frame Control field**

**7.2.5.1.2.2 Frame Type subfield**

The Frame Type subfield is 3 bits in length and shall be set to b100 indicating this type of shortened MAC frame.

The Frame Type subfield corresponds to the Frame Type subfield of the general MAC frame format in 7.2.1. in meaning and position. The new type b100 allows efficient recognition of frames with a Shortened Frame Control field, but allows the usage of all other MAC frames within the superframe structure associated with this frame type.

**7.2.5.1.2.3 Security Enabled subfield**

The Security Enabled subfield is 1 bit in length, and it shall be set to one if the frame is protected by the MAC sublayer and shall be set to zero otherwise. The Auxiliary Security Header field of the MHR shall be present only if the Security Enabled subfield is set to one.

**7.2.5.1.2.4 Frame Version subfield**

The Frame Version subfield is 1 bit in length and specifies the version number corresponding to the frame. This subfield shall be set to 0 to indicate a frame compatible with IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006 and newer editions. All other subfield values shall be reserved for future use.

**7.2.5.1.2.5 ACK Request subfield**

The ACK Request subfield is 1 bit in length and specifies whether an acknowledgment is required from the recipient device on receipt of a data or MAC command frame. If this subfield is set to one, the recipient device shall send an acknowledgment frame only if, upon reception, the frame passes the third level of filtering (see 7.5.6.2). If this subfield is set to zero, the recipient device shall not send an acknowledgment frame.

**7.2.5.1.2.6 Sub Frame Type subfield**

The Sub Frame Type subfield is 2 bits in length and indicates the type of frame with a Shortened Frame Control field. Possible values are given in Table 122.a.

**Table 122.a—Values of Frame Subtype subfield**

Value of Sub Frame Type subfield	Frame with Shortened Frame Control field of type
b00	Beacon frame
b01	Command frame
b10	Acknowledgement frame
b11	Data frame

**7.2.5.1.3 Frame Payload field**

The Frame Payload field has a variable length and contains information specific to individual sub frame types.

#### 1 **7.2.5.1.4 FCS field**

2 The FCS field is 2 octets in length and contains a 16-bit ITU-T CRC. The FCS is calculated over the MHR  
3 and MAC payload parts of the frame. The calculation of the FCS follows the same rules as defined in  
4 7.2.1.9.

#### 5 **7.2.5.2 Format of individual frame types with MHR of 1 octet**

##### 6 **7.2.5.2.1 General**

7 Four sub frame types are defined: beacon, data, acknowledgment, and MAC command. These sub frame  
8 types are discussed in 7.2.5.1. The definition of the sub frame types is given in Table 122.a.

##### 9 **7.2.5.2.2 Beacon frame format**

###### 10 **7.2.5.2.2.1 General**

11 The Beacon frame with shortened frame control (1 octet MAC header) is sent during the beacon slot in every  
12 superframe. The structure of a Beacon frame depends on the current transmission mode (see 7.5.9). The  
13 general structure of the beacon frame is shown in Figure 92.g.

Octets: 1	1 or variable	2
Shortend Frame Control	Flags / Beacon Payload	FCS
MHR	MAC Payload	MFR

14  
15  
16 **Figure 92.g—Format of the Shortened Beacon Frame**

17 The beacon frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the frame type and  
18 sub frame type, followed by the beacon payload and the MAC footer (MFR). The beacon payload contains  
19 the transmission mode and several flags and information fields, those existences depend on the current  
20 transmission mode.

###### 21 **7.2.5.2.2.2 Beacon frame MHR fields**

22 The beacon frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the Shortened Frame  
23 Control field.

24 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
25 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
26 the value that indicates a beacon frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

###### 27 **7.2.5.2.2.3 Flags / Beacon Payload in online mode**

28 The beacon payload in online mode is of variable length. It contains flags which includes the transmission  
29 mode, the Gateway ID and configuration sequence number, the size of a base time slot, and a group  
30 acknowledgement. The structure of the beacon payload for beacon frames indicating online mode is depicted  
31 in Figure 92.h.

32

<b>Octets: 1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>variable</b>
Flags	Gateway ID	Configuration Sequence Number	Timeslot Size	Group Acknowledgement

**Figure 92.h—Beacon payload in online mode**

The Flags field contains several control information. The structure of the Flags field is shown in Figure 92.i.

<b>Bits: 0-2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5-7</b>
Transmission Mode	Actuator Direction	Reserved	Number of Base Timeslots per Management Timeslot

**Figure 92.i—Structure of Flags field of Beacons with 1-octet MAC-Header in online mode**

The Transmission Mode subfield defines the transmission mode. It is set to the value for online mode as specified in Table 122.b.

**Table 122.b—Transmission Mode settings**

<b>Bits 0-2</b>	<b>Transmission Mode</b>
000	Online Mode (see 7.5.9.4)
100	Discovery Mode (see 7.5.9.2)
110	Configuration Mode (see 7.5.9.3)
1x1	Mode Reset: The devices reset their state of the discovery or configuration mode. The setting of bit 1 is of no significance.

The Actuator Direction subfield indicates the transmission direction of all actuator time slots. The bit defines the transmission direction of all actuator time slots during this superframe. If the Actuator Direction subfield is set to 0, the direction of all actuator time slots is uplink (from actuator to gateway). If the Actuator Direction subfield is set to 1, the direction of all actuator time slots is downlink (from gateway to actuator).

The Number of Base Timeslots per Management Timeslot subfield contains the number of base time slots per management time slot. This value applies to both the downlink and the uplink management time slot. A value of 0 indicates that there are no management time slots available in the superframe.

The Group Acknowledgement field is a bitmap of length ( $macFAnumTimeSlots - macFAnumRetransmitTS$ ) bits as shown in Figure 1.c and Figure 92.j to indicate failed sensor and actuator transmissions from the previous superframe. In the separate group acknowledgment configuration, this field is not present in the beacon. The Group Acknowledgement field contains a bit field where each bit corresponds to a time slot associated with a sensor device or an actuator device excluding retransmission time slots. Bit  $b_0$  of the Group Acknowledgement bitmap corresponds to the first time slot after the  $macFAnumRetransmitTS$  retransmission time slots, bit  $b_1$  of the Group Acknowledgement bitmap corresponds to the second time slot, and so on. Bit value 1 means the sensor transmission was successful, and bit value 0 means the sensor transmission in the previous superframe failed and the sensor is allocated a time slot for retransmission in the current superframe. Because concatenated time slots are multiples of base time slots, a concatenated time slot of length of  $n$  base time slots will have  $n$  bits in the group acknowledgement bitmap at the corresponding positions.

<b><math>b_0</math></b>	<b><math>b_1</math></b>	...	<b><math>b_{(macFAnumTimeSlots - macFAnumRetransmitTS - 1)}</math></b>
acknowledgement of transmission in time slot $macFAnumRetransmitTS+1$	acknowledgement of transmission in time slot $macFAnumRetransmitTS+2$	...	acknowledgement of transmission in time slot $macFAnumTimeSlots$

**Figure 92.j—Structure of Group Acknowledgement bitmap**

1 If the gateway received a data frame successfully in a time slot associated with a sensor device or an actuator  
 2 device during the previous superframe, it shall set the corresponding bit in the Group Acknowledgement  
 3 field to 1, otherwise to 0 (corrupted transmission, no transmission). If the data frame has been received  
 4 during a shared group time slot, all corresponding bits of this shared group time slot will be set accordingly  
 5 in the Group Acknowledgement bitmap.

#### 6 7.2.5.2.2.4 Flags / Beacon payload for discovery and configuration mode

7 The beacon payload in discovery or configuration mode is 1 octet of length. It contains a flags field which  
 8 contains the transmission mode. The structure of the beacon payload for beacon frames indicating discovery  
 9 or configuration mode is depicted in Figure 92.k.

Bits: 0-2	3-7
Transmission Mode	Reserved

10  
11 **Figure 92.k—Beacon payload in discovery / configuration mode**

12 The Transmission Mode field is represented by 3 bits in discovery and configuration mode. The values that  
 13 are allowed for the setting of the transmission mode are given in Table 122.b, x meaning 0 or 1.

14 Bits 3 through 7 are reserved and set to 0 on transmission.

#### 15 7.2.5.2.3 Data frame format

##### 16 7.2.5.2.3.1 General

17 The structure of the data frame with shortened frame control is illustrated in Figure 92.l.

Octets: 1	variable	2
Shortend Frame Control	Data Payload	FCS
MHR	MAC Payload	MFR

18  
19 **Figure 92.l—Format of Data Frame with Shortened Frame Control Field**

20 The data frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the frame type and sub  
 21 frame type, followed by the data payload and the MAC footer (MFR).

##### 22 7.2.5.2.3.2 Data frame MHR fields

23 The data frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the Shortened Frame  
 24 Control field.

25 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
 26 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
 27 the value that indicates a data frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

##### 28 7.2.5.2.3.3 Data Payload field

29 The payload of a data frame with shortened frame control shall obtain the sequence of octets that the next  
 30 higher layer has requested the MAC sublayer to transmit.

1 **7.2.5.2.4 Acknowledgement frame format**

2 **7.2.5.2.4.1 General**

3 The structure of the acknowledgement frame with shortened frame control is shown in Figure 92.m.

<b>Octets: 1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>variable</b>	<b>2</b>
Shortend Frame Control	Acknowledgement Type	Acknowledgement Payload	FCS
MHR	MAC Payload		MFR

4

5

**Figure 92.m—Format of the Shortened Acknowledgement Frame**

6

The acknowledgement frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the frame type and sub frame type, followed by the acknowledgement type and, if applicable, the acknowledgement payload, and the MAC footer (MFR).

7

9 **7.2.5.2.4.2 Acknowledgement frame MHR fields**

10

The acknowledgement frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the Shortened Frame Control field.

11

12

In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates an acknowledgement frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

13

14

15 **7.2.5.2.4.3 Acknowledgement Type field**

16

The Acknowledgement Type field is 1 octet in length and indicates the type of frame that is acknowledged. Possible values are listed in Table 122.c.

17

18

**Table 122.c—Acknowledgement Types**

<b>Numeric Value</b>	<b>Acknowledged Frame Type</b>	<b>Acknowledgement Payload</b>
0x11	Discover Response	No
0x92	Configuration Request	No
0x01	Data	No
0x02	Data Group ACK	Yes (see 7.2.5.2.4.5)

19

20 **7.2.5.2.4.4 Acknowledgement Payload field**

21

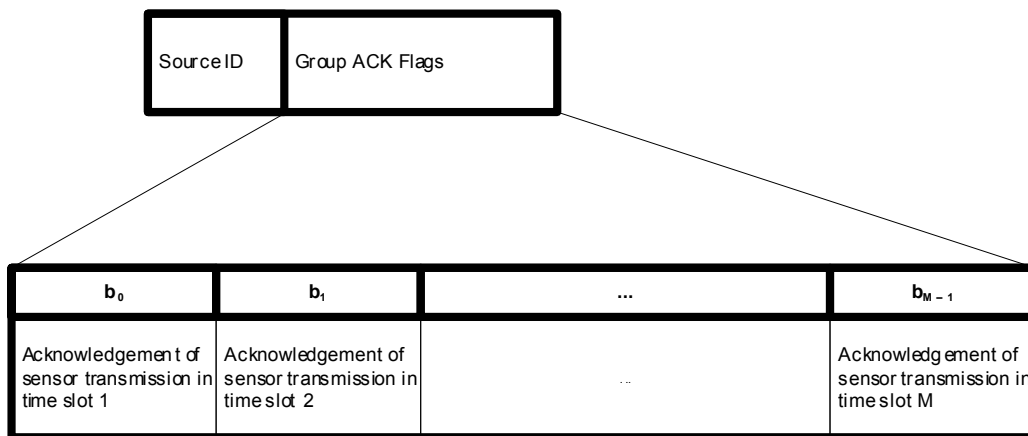
The Acknowledgement Payload field is only available in certain acknowledgement types as depicted in Table 122.c. The structure and the length of the Acknowledgement Payload field depends on the value of the Acknowledgement Type field.

22

23

24 **7.2.5.2.4.5 Data Group ACK (GACK)**

1 The structure of the Acknowledgement Payload field of the group acknowledgement frame is shown in  
 2 Figure 92.n.



3 **Figure 92.n—Format of the GACK Frame**

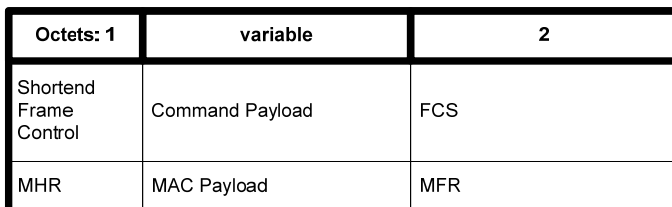
4 The Source ID field identifies the transmitting gateway.  
 5

6 The Group Ack Flags field is a bitmap that indicates the states of transmissions of the sensors in the sensor  
 7 time slots of the current superframe. A bit set to 1 indicates the fact that the coordinator received the data  
 8 frame successfully in the corresponding time slot. A value of 0 means that the coordinator failed in receiving  
 9 a data frame in the corresponding slot from the sensor.

10 **7.2.5.2.5 MAC Command frame format**

11 **7.2.5.2.5.1 General**

12 There are different types of MAC command frames with a shortened frame control. They follow the same  
 13 general structure of MAC command frames with shortened frame control as shown in Figure 92.o. Only the  
 14 Command Payload is different.



15 **Figure 92.o—Format of the shortened Command frames**

16  
 17 The MAC command frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the frame  
 18 type and sub frame type, followed by the command payload and the MAC footer (MFR).  
 19

20 **7.2.5.2.5.2 MAC command frame MHR fields**

21 The MAC command frame does have a very short MAC header (MHR) of one octet containing the  
 22 Shortened Frame Control field.

1 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
 2 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
 3 the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

4 **7.2.5.2.5.3 Command Payload field**

5 The first octet of the command payload contains the command frame identifier. Table 123 contains the  
 6 values that are defined.

7 The remaining octets of the Command Payload field are of variable length and contain data specific to the  
 8 different command frame types.

9 **7.2.6 CM-Frame Formats**

10 **7.2.6.1 General MAC frame format**

11 Subclause 7.2.1 applies.

12 **7.2.6.2 Format of individual frame types**

13 **7.2.6.2.1 General**

14 Four frame types are defined: beacon, data, acknowledgment, and MAC command. These frame types are  
 15 discussed in 7.2.6.2 through 7.2.6.5.

16 **7.2.6.2.2 Beacon frame format**

17 **7.2.6.2.2.1 General**

18 The beacon frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 82.

octets: 2	1	4/10	0/5/6/10/14	2	variable	variable	4	variable	4	variable	variable	2
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Addressing Fields	Auxiliary Security Header	Superframe Specification	GTS (Figure 45)	Pending address fields (Figure 46)	EGTS Superframe Specification (Figure 51b)	ChannelHoppingSpecification (Figure 44a)	Time synchronization Specification (Figure 54)	Beacon Bitmap (Figure 53)	Beacon Payload	FCS
MHR	MAC Payload										MFR	

19 **Figure 92.p—Beacon frame format**

20 **7.2.6.2.2.2 Beacon frame MHR fields**

21 The Frame Version subfield is 2 bits in length and specifies the version number corresponding to the frame.

22 This subfield shall be set to 0x00 to indicate a frame compatible with IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003, 0x01 to  
 23 indicate an IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006 frame and 0x10 to indicate an CM-frame. All other subfield values shall  
 24 be reserved for future use. See 7.2.3 for details on frame compatibility.

25 **7.2.6.2.2.3 Superframe Specification field**

26 7.2.2.1.2 applies.

1 **7.2.6.2.2.4 GTS Specification field**

2 7.2.2.1.3 applies.

3 **7.2.6.2.2.5 GTS Directions field**

4 7.2.2.1.4 applies.

5 **7.2.6.2.2.6 GTS List field**

6 7.2.2.1.5 applies.

7 **7.2.6.2.2.7 Pending Address Specification field**

8 7.2.2.1.6 applies.

9 **7.2.6.2.2.8 Address List field**

10 7.2.2.1.7 applies.

11 **7.2.6.2.2.9 Beacon Payload field**

12 7.2.2.1.8 applies.

13 **7.2.6.2.2.10 EGTS Superframe Specification field**

14 The EGTS Superframe Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 92.q.

bits: 0-3	4	5	6	7	8-23	24-31	32	33-35	variable
Multi- superframe Order (MO)	EGTS Flag	CAP Reduction Flag	Embedded CAP/CFP Flag	Channel Diversity Mode	CAP Index	Number of Subslots	GACK Flag	ECFP Start Slot Length	ECFP Start Slot

Comment [youcy3]: In 15.4, all the subfields indicating the timeslot in different frame are 4 bits in length, but why the length of the ECFP Start Slot subfield is variable?

15 **Figure 92.q—Format of the EGTS Superframe Specification field**

16 The Multi-superframe Order subfield is 4 bits in length and shall specify the length of time during which a  
 17 group of superframes that is considered as one multi-superframe is active (i.e., receiver enabled), including  
 18 the beacon frame transmission time. See 7.5.1.1 for an explanation of the relationship between the Multi-  
 19 superframe Order and the multi-superframe duration.

20 The EGTS Flag subfield is 1 bit in length, and it shall be set to zero if the CFP of a superframe is operated  
 21 the same way as defined in IEEE 802.15.4-2006, and the other subfields in the EGTS Superframe  
 22 Specification field shall all be ignored. The EGTS Flag bit shall be set to one if the CFP of a superframe is  
 23 operated as the EGTS mode (defined in 7.5.9 and 7.5.10).

24 The CAP Reduction Flag subfield is 1 bit in length and shall be set to one if the CAP reduction is enabled.  
 25 Otherwise, the CAP Reduction Flag subfield shall be set to zero.

26 The Embedded CAP/CFP Flag subfield is 1 bit in length, and shall be set to zero if the Embedded CAP is  
 27 used (see 7.5.9). The Embedded CAP/CFP Flag bit shall be set to zero if the Embedded CFP is used (see  
 28 7.5.9).

29 The CAP Index subfield is 2 octets in length and shall specify the number of superframes before the next  
 30 CAP begins. This subfield is valid only if the CAP Reduction Flag subfield is set to one.



- 1 The Number of Sub-slots subfield is 8 bits in length and shall specify the number of sub-slots which are
- 2 divided within a slot. This subfield is valid only if the Embedded CAP/CFP Flag subfield is set to zero.
  
- 3 The Channel Diversity mode subfield is 1 bit in length and shall indicate the type of channel diversity. If this
- 4 value is '0', EGTS runs on channel adaptation mode. If this value is '1', EGTS runs on channel hopping
- 5 mode. If this subfield is '0', the following Channel Hopping Specification field is not present.
  
- 6 The GACK Flag subfield is 1 bit in length and shall indicate whether the transmitting device is using EGTS
- 7 multi-frame structure with group acknowledgement mechanism. If the GACK Flag subfield is set to '1', the
- 8 superframe of the transmitting device shall be using group acknowledge mechanism, and have a structure as
- 9 shown in Figure 8. If the GACK Flag subfield is set to '0', the transmitting FFD can not support group
- 10 acknowledgement mechanism, the superframe structure will be shown as Figure 7, and the following ECFP
- 11 Start subfield is not present.
  
- 12 The ECFP Start Length subfield is 3 bits in length and shall specify the length of the ECFP Start subfield.
  
- 13 The ECFP Start subfield shall specify the timeslot number of GACK frame transmitting (see 7.5.9.3), as the
- 14 end of the CFP and start of the ECFP in the superframe structure as shown in Figure 8. The length of the
- 15 ECFP Start subfield is variable and specified by the ECFP Start Length subfield.

16 **7.2.6.2.2.11 Channel Hopping Specification field**

17 The Channel Hopping Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 92.r.

octets: 1	1	variable
Channel Offset	ChannelOffset Bitmap Length	ChannelOffset Bitmap

18 **Figure 92.r— Format of the ChannelHoppingSpecification field**

- 19 The Channel Hopping Specification field shall be present, if Channel Diversity Mode subfield in the EGTS
- 20 Superframe Specification field is set to '1'.
  
- 21 The ChannelOffset subfield is 1 octet in length and shall specify the channel hopping offset value of the
- 22 device.
  
- 23 The ChannelOffsetBitmapLength subfield is 1 octet in length and shall specify the length of
- 24 ChannelOffsetBitmap subfield.
  
- 25 The ChannelOffsetBitmap subfield shall indicate the occupancy of channel hopping offset values among
- 26 neighbor devices and be represented in bitmap. Each bit shall be set to '1', if the corresponding channel
- 27 hopping offset value is already occupied by the neighbor devices, otherwise it shall be set to '0' if the
- 28 corresponding channel hopping value is not occupied. For instance, ChannelOffsetBitmap of 1100100.0
- 29 indicates that channel hopping offset values of 0, 1, and 4 are being used by neighbor devices. Note that the
- 30 (i)th bit in the ChannelOffsetBitmap corresponds to (i-1)th channel offset value. The length of
- 31 ChannelOffsetBitmap subfield is variable, which is defined by the values specified in
- 32 ChannelOffsetBitmapLength subfield.

33 **7.2.6.2.2.12 Time Synchronization Specification field**

34 The Time Synchronization Specification field is 4 octets in length and shall be formatted as illustrated in

35 Figure 92.s.

bits: 0	1-4	5-7	8-31
Deferred Beacon Flag	Deferred Beacon Time	Reserved	Beacon Timestamp

36 **Figure 92.s—Format of the Time Synchronization Specification field**

- 37 The Deferred Beacon Flag subfield is 1 bit in length and shall be set to one if the device uses CCA before
- 38 transmitting beacon frame, otherwise the bit shall be set to zero if the device shall not use CCA before
- 39 transmitting beacon.

1 The Deferred Beacon Time subfield is 4 bits in length and shall specify the number of backoff period for  
2 CCA. If the Deferred Beacon Flag bit is set to zero, this subfield shall be ignored.

3 The Beacon Timestamp subfield is 3 octets in length and shall specify the time of beacon transmission for  
4 time synchronization in symbol periods.

#### 5 **7.2.6.2.2.13 Beacon Bitmap field**

6 The Beacon Bitmap field is 8 bits in length and shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 51D.

octets: 2	variable
SD Index	SD Bitmap

7 **Figure 92.t—Format of the Beacon Bitmap field**

8 The SD Index subfield is 2 octets in length and specifies the Superframe Duration (SD) bank number that is  
9 allocated to the Source device of the beacon.

10 The SD Bitmap subfield is 2(BO-SO) bits in length and shall indicate the beacon frame allocation  
11 information of neighbor nodes. This subfield is expressed in bitmap format which orderly represents the  
12 schedule of beacons, with corresponding bit shall be set to one if a beacon of neighbor nodes is allocated in  
13 that SD.

#### 14 **7.2.6.2.3 Data frame format**

15 Subclause 7.2.2.2 applies.

#### 16 **7.2.6.2.4 Acknowledgment frame format**

17 Subclause 7.2.2.3 applies.

#### 18 **7.2.6.2.5 MAC command frame format**

19 Subclause 7.2.2.4 applies.

20

### 21 **7.3 MAC command frames**

22 *Change the first two paragraphs according to the text below.*

23 The command frames defined by the MAC sub-layer are listed in Table 123. An FFD shall be capable of  
24 transmitting and receiving all command frame types, with the exception of the GTS request command, while  
25 the requirements for an RFD are indicated in the table. MAC commands shall only be transmitted in the  
26 CAP for beacon-enabled PANs, in management time slots of Low Latency networks, or at any time for non-  
27 beacon-enabled PANs.

28

29 How the MLME shall construct the individual commands for transmission is detailed in 7.3.1 through  
30 7.3.129. MAC command reception shall abide by the procedure described in 7.5.6.2.

#### 31 **7.3.1 Association request command**

32 *Change the Table 123 according to the Table below.*

1

Table 123—MAC command frames

Command frame identifier	Command name	RFD		Subclause
		Tx	Rx	
<b>0x01</b>	<b>Association request</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.1</b>
<b>0x02</b>	<b>Association response</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.2</b>
<b>0x03</b>	<b>Disassociation notification</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.3</b>
<b>0x04</b>	<b>Data request</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.4</b>
<b>0x05</b>	<b>PAN ID conflict notification</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.5</b>
<b>0x06</b>	<b>Orphan notification</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.6</b>
<b>0x07</b>	<b>Beacon request</b>			<b>7.3.7</b>
<b>0x08</b>	<b>Coordinator realignment</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.8</b>
<b>0x09</b>	<b>GTS request</b>			<b>7.3.9</b>
<b>0x0a–0xff</b>	<b>Reserved</b>			<b>—</b>
<b>0x0a</b>	<b>Advertisement</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.10.1</b>
<b>0x0b</b>	<b>Join</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.10.2</b>
<b>0x0c</b>	<b>Activate</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.10.3</b>
<b>0x0d</b>	<b>Discover Response</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.11.1</b>
<b>0x0e</b>	<b>Configuration Response</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.11.2</b>
<b>0x0f</b>	<b>Configuration Request</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.11.3</b>
<b>0x10</b>	<b>CTS Shared Group</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.11.4</b>
<b>0x11</b>	<b>Request to send (RTS)</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.11.5</b>
<b>0x12</b>	<b>Clear to Send (CTS)</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.11.6</b>
<b>0x13</b>	<b>EGTS handshake</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.10</b>
<b>0x14</b>	<b>EGTS information request</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.11</b>
<b>0x15</b>	<b>EGTS information reply</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.12</b>
<b>0x16</b>	<b>Beacon allocation notification</b>			<b>7.3.13</b>
<b>0x17</b>	<b>Beacon conflict notification</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>7.3.14</b>
<b>0x18</b>	<b>Link status report</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.15</b>
<b>0x19</b>	<b>Asymmetric multi-channel beacon request</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.16</b>
<b>0x1a</b>	<b>Multi-channel hello</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.17</b>
<b>0x1b</b>	<b>Multi-channel hello reply</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.18</b>
<b>0x1c</b>	<b>Channel probe</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.19</b>
<b>0x1d</b>	<b>RIT data request</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>7.3.14.4</b>
<b>0x1e–0xff</b>	<b>Reserved</b>			<b>—</b>

2

1 **7.3.2 Association response command**

2 **7.3.2.1 MHR fields**

3 **7.3.2.2 Short Address field**

4 **7.3.2.3 Association Status field**

5 *Change the Table 124 according to the Table below.*

Association status	Description
0x00	Association successful.
0x01	PAN at capacity.
0x02	PAN access denied.
0x03	Channel hopping sequence offset duplication (see 7.3.12.3.6)
0x04-0x7f	Reserved.
0x80-0xff	Reserved for MAC primitives enumeration values.

6  
7

8 **7.3.8 Coordinator realignment command**

9 **7.3.9 GTS request command**

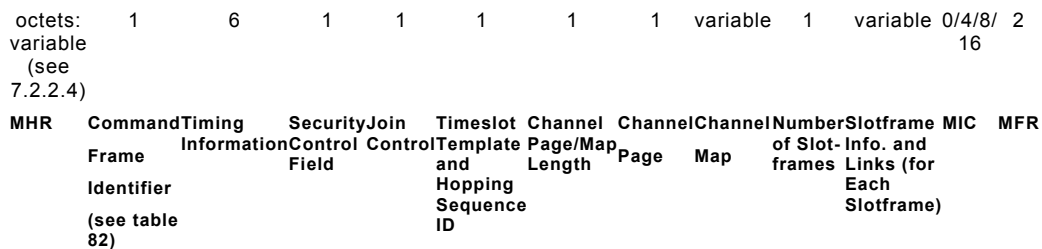
10 *Insert before 7.4 the following subclauses.*

11 **7.3.10 PA-commands**

12 **7.3.10.1 Advertisement command**

13 **7.3.10.1.1 General**

14 The Advertisement command is used by FFDs to invite new devices into the network. When a device wishes  
15 to join a network, it shall use the information in Advertisement command frames to synchronize to the  
16 network and request an association. Figure 103.a shows the format of the Advertisement command.



17 **Figure 103.a—Advertisement command format**

18

1 **7.3.10.1.2 MHR field**

2 The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to three (64-bit extended  
3 addressing). The Destination Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to the broadcast address, i.e. 0xFFFF.

4 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon receipt, and the  
5 Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to zero. The Source PAN Identifier field shall contain the  
6 PAN identifier of the node. The Source Address field shall contain the value of an ExtendedAddress.

7 The Sequence Number subfield shall be set to the least significant byte of the absolute slot number.

8 **7.3.10.1.3 Command Frame Identifier field**

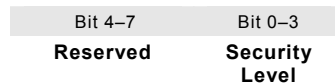
9 The Type field shall be set to Advertisement (0x0a).

10 **7.3.10.1.4 Timing Information field**

11 The Timing Information field shall be set to the time information (i.e. Absolute Slot Number) of the timeslot  
12 being used for transmission of this command frame.

13 **7.3.10.1.5 Security Control field**

14 Figure 103.b shows the Security Control field.



15 **Figure 103.b—Security Control field**

16 The Security Level subfield should be set to the security level supported. The definition of the Security  
17 Level subfield can be found in Table 136.

18 **7.3.10.1.6 Join Control field**

19 Figure 103.c shows the Join Control field.



20 **Figure 103.c—Join Control field**

21 The Join Priority subfield can be used by a joining device to decide which Network Devices to include in its  
22 Association Request if it hears advertisements from more than one device.

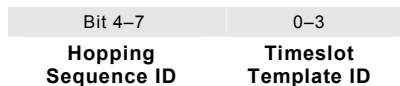
23 A lower value of join priority indicates that the device is a preferred one to connect to.

24

25 **7.3.10.1.7 Timeslot Template and Hopping Sequence ID field**

26 The Timeslot Template and Hopping Sequence ID field shall be set to the ID of the timeslot template and the  
27 ID of the hopping sequence used by the MAC. The timeslot templates and hopping sequences are defined in  
28 MAC PIB.

29 Figure 103.d shows the Timeslot Template and Hopping Sequence ID field.



**Figure 103.d—Timeslot Template and Hopping Sequence ID field**

1  
2

3 **7.3.10.1.8 Channel Page/Map Length field**

4 The Channel Page/Map field shall be set to the combined length of following channel page and channel map  
5 fields.

6 **7.3.10.1.9 Channel Page field**

7 The Channel Page field shall be set to the channel page of channels that the joining device shall use for its  
8 hopping sequence.

9 **7.3.10.1.10 Channel Map field**

10 The Channel Map field shall be set to the channel map of channels that the joining device shall use for its  
11 hopping sequence.

12 **7.3.10.1.11 Number of Slotframes field**

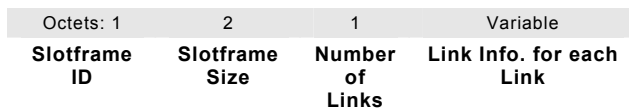
13 The Number of Slotframes field is set to the total number of slotframes for which information is being  
14 advertised in this command frame.

15 **7.3.10.1.12 Slotframe Information and Links (for each slotframe) field**

16 **7.3.10.1.13 General**

17 Slotframe Information and Links field is included for each slotframe. The format of Slotframe Information  
18 and Links field is depicted as shown in Figure 103.e.

19



**Figure 103.e—Slotframe and Links field**

20  
21

22 **7.3.10.1.14 Slotframe ID subfield**

23 Slotframe ID shall be set to the ID that uniquely identifies the slotframe.

24 **7.3.10.1.15 Slotframe Size subfield**

25 Slotframe Size shall be set to the size of the slotframe in number of timeslots.

26 **7.3.10.1.16 Number of Links subfield**

27 The Number of Links subfield shall be set to the number of links that belong to the specific slotframe  
28 indicated in preceding slotframe ID.

1 **7.3.10.1.17 Link Information (for each link) subfield**

2 The Link Information subfield describes the attributes of each link. The format of Link Information subfield  
3 is depicted as shown in Figure 103.f.



5 **Figure 103.f—Link Information field**

6 **7.3.10.1.18 Timeslot subfield**

7 The Timeslot subfield shall be set to the timeslot of this link.

8 **7.3.10.1.19 Channel Offset Information subfield**

9 The Channel Offset Information subfield shall be set to the channel offset of this link.

10 **7.3.10.1.20 Link Option subfield**

11 The Link Option subfield indicates whether this link is a TX link, an RX link, or a SHARED TX link.  
12 SHARED TX links can be used for a joining device to send its Join command. RX links are used for a new  
13 device to receive Advertisement commands. RX links can also be used for a joining device to receive its  
14 Activate command from the network. It is possible for one link to be used as both SHARED\_TX and RX  
15 link.

16 **7.3.10.1.21 MIC**

17 The message integrity check of the Advertisement command frame.

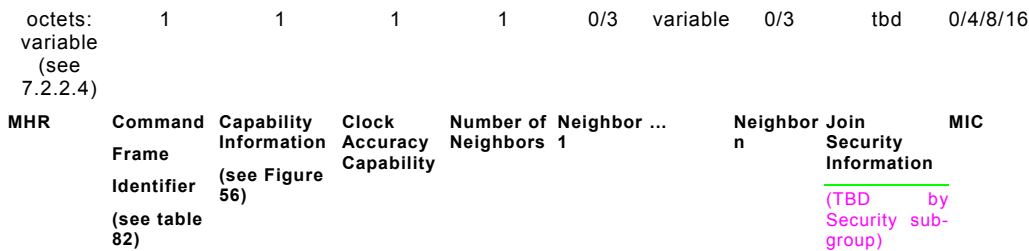
18 **7.3.10.2 Join command**

19 **7.3.10.2.1 General**

20 The Join command is used by a device to join the PA-network through the advertiser. This command shall  
21 only be sent by a new device that wishes to join the PA-network or a device that lost connection with the  
22 PA-network.

23 All devices shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of  
24 receiving it.

25 The Join command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.g.



26 **Figure 103.g—Join command format**

**1 7.3.10.2.2 MHR fields**

2 The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to three (64-bit extended  
3 addressing). The Destination Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to the same mode as indicated in  
4 Advertisement command frame to which the Join command refers.

5 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon receipt, and the  
6 Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to one.

7 The Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the identifier of the PAN to which to join. The Destination  
8 Address field shall contain the address from the Advertisement frame that was transmitted by the coordinator  
9 to which the Join command is being sent. The PAN ID Compression subfield may be set to one and the  
10 Source PAN Identifier may be omitted. The Source Address field shall contain the value of an  
11 ExtendedAddress.

12 The Sequence Number subfield shall be set to the least significant byte of the absolute timeslot number.

**13 7.3.10.2.3 Command Frame Identifier field**

14 The Type field shall be set to *Join (0x0b)*.

15

**16 7.3.10.2.4 Capability Information field**

17  
18 The Capability Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 94.

19

**20 7.3.10.2.5 Clock Accuracy Capability field**

21 The Clock Accuracy Capability field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.h.

22

23



24 **Figure 103.h—Clock Accuracy Capability**

**25 7.3.10.2.6 Join Security Information field**

26 The definition of Join Security Information field shall contain the security information that the new device to  
27 mutually authenticate the new joining device and Security Manager. This will be defined by Security sub-  
28 group.

**29 7.3.10.2.7 Number of Neighbor field**

30 The Number of Neighbor field indicates the number of neighbors included in this command frame.

**31 7.3.10.2.8 Neighbor field**

32 The Neighbor field shall contain the information about the neighbors of the new device. The Neighbor field  
33 shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.h.

34



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27



**Figure 103.i—Neighbor**

**7.3.10.2.9 MIC**

This field contains the message integrity check of the Join command frame.

**7.3.10.3 Activate command**

**7.3.10.3.1 General**

The Activate command allows the advertiser to communicate the results of a Join attempt back to the device requested joining. The Activate command can also include the description of slotframe and links for the joining device to communicate with the PA-network.

This command shall only be sent by the advertiser to the device that is currently trying to join.

All devices shall be capable of receiving this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of transmitting it.

The Activate command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.j.

Octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	2	1	variable	tbd	0/4/8/16
<b>MHR fields</b>	<b>Command frame Identifier (see Table 123)</b>	<b>Short Address</b>	<b>Number of Slot- frames</b>	<b>Slotframe Info. and Links (for Each Slotframe)</b>	<b>Activate Security Information (TBD by Security sub-group)</b>	<b>MIC</b>

**Figure 103.j— Activate command format**

**7.3.10.3.2 MHR**

The Destination Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to three (i.e., 64-bit extended addressing). The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to two (i.e., 16-bit addressing).

The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon receipt, and the Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to one.

The Source PAN Identifier field shall contain the value of macPANId. The Source Address field shall contain the value of a CoordShortAddress.

The Destination PAN Identifier field should be set to 0xFFFF. Destination Address field shall contain the extended address of the device requesting to join the network.

The Sequence Number subfield shall be set to the least significant byte of the absolute timeslot number.

**7.3.10.3.3 Command Frame Identifier field**

The Type field shall be set to Activate (0x0c).

1 **7.3.10.3.4 Short Address field**

2 If the advertiser was not able to join this device to its PAN, the Short Address field shall be set to 0xffff, and  
 3 the Join Status field shall contain the reason for the failure. If the was advertiser is able to Join the device to  
 4 its PAN, this field shall contain the short address that the device shall use in its communications on the PAN  
 5 until it is disconnected.

6 The device shall use the source PANID of the Activate command as its PANID.

7 **7.3.10.3.5 Number of Links field**

8 The Number of Links field shall be set to the total number of links assigned to new device being activated.

9 **7.3.10.3.6 Link field**

10 Link field shall have the description of link allocated to new device being activated. The format of Link field  
 11 shall be according to 7.3.10.1.11.

12 **7.3.10.3.7 Activate Security Information field**

13 The definition of Activate Security Information field shall contain the security information that the new  
 14 device should use to securely communicate to the PA-network. It may include keys for data link and session  
 15 layers.

16 **7.3.10.3.8 MIC**

17 This field contains the message integrity check of the Activate command frame.

18 **7.3.11 LL-commands**

19 **7.3.11.1 Discover Response command**

20 **7.3.11.1.1 General**

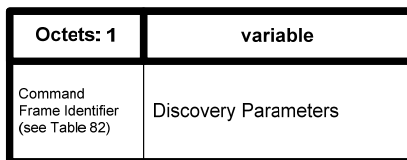
21 The Discover Response command contains the configuration parameters that have to be transmitted to the  
 22 gateway as input for the configuration process in a Low Latency network.

23 This command shall only be sent by a device that has received a beacon with shortened frame control (see  
 24 7.2.2.1) indicating discovery mode as determined through the procedures of the discovery mode (see  
 25 7.5.9.2).

26 All devices shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of  
 27 receiving it.

28 The command payload of the discover response frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.k.

29



30

31

**Figure 103.k—Discover response command MAC payload**

1     **7.3.11.1.2 7.3.10.1 MHR fields**

2     **7.3.11.1.2.1 General**

3     The discover response command can be sent using both MAC command frames (7.2.2.4) or MAC command  
4     frames with shortened frame control (7.2.5.2.5).

5     **7.3.11.1.2.2 Using MAC command frames**

6     The Frame Type subfield of the Frame Control field shall contain the value that indicates a MAC command  
7     frame, as shown in Table 120.

8     The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to 3 (64-bit extended  
9     addressing).

10    The Source Address field shall contain the value of aExtendedAddress.

11    **7.3.11.1.2.3 Using MAC command frames with shortened frame control**

12    In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
13    frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
14    the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

15    **7.3.11.1.3 7.3.10.2 Command Frame Identifier field**

16    The Command Frame Identifier field contains the value for the discover response command frame as defined  
17    in Table 123.

18    **7.3.11.1.4 7.3.10.3 Discovery Parameters field**

19    The Discovery Parameters field contains the configuration parameters that have to be transmitted to the  
20    gateway as input for the configuration process. The discovery parameters consist of:

- 21    — full MAC address
- 22    — required time slot duration, this is defined by the application of the device (e.g. size of sensor data)
- 23    — sensor / actuator type indicator

24    **7.3.11.2 Configuration Response Frame**

25    **7.3.11.2.1 General**

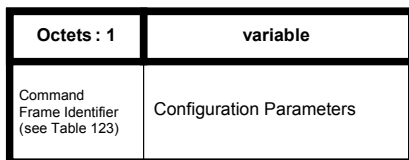
26    The Configuration Response command contains the configuration parameters that are currently configured at  
27    the device as input for the configuration process in a Wireless Factory Automation network.

28    This command shall only be sent by a device that has received a beacon with shortened frame control (see  
29    7.2.5.2.2) indicating configuration mode as determined through the procedures of the configuration mode  
30    (see 7.5.9.3).

31    All devices shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of  
32    receiving it.

33    The command payload of the Configuration Response Frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.1.

34



1

2

**Figure 103.I—Configuration response command MAC payload****3 7.3.11.2.2 MHR fields**

4 The configuration response command can be sent using both MAC command frames (7.2.2.4) or MAC  
5 command frames with shortened frame control (see 7.2.5.2.5).

**6 7.3.11.2.3 7.3.11.1.1 Using MAC command frames****7 7.3.11.2.3.1 General**

8 The Frame Type subfield of the Frame Control field shall contain the value that indicates a MAC command  
9 frame, as shown in Table 120.

10 The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to 1 (8-bit short addressing) or  
11 3 (64-bit extended addressing).

12 The Source Address field shall contain the value of aVeryShortAddress or aExtendedAddress respectively.

**13 7.3.11.2.3.2 Using MAC command frames with shortened frame control**

14 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
15 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
16 the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

**17 7.3.11.2.4 Command Frame Identifier field**

18 The Command Frame Identifier field contains the value for the configuration response frame as defined in  
19 Table 123.

**20 7.3.11.2.5 Configuration Parameters field**

21 The Configuration Parameters field contains the configuration parameters that are currently configured at the  
22 device. The configuration parameters consist of:

- 23 — full MAC address
- 24 — short MAC address
- 25 — required time slot duration, this is defined by the application of the device (e.g. size of sensor data)
- 26 — sensor / actuator
- 27 — assigned time slots

### 1 7.3.11.3 Configuration Request Frame

#### 2 7.3.11.3.1 General

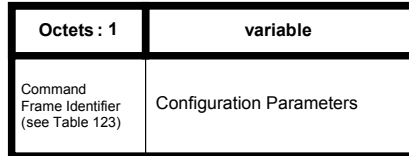
3 The Configuration Request command contains the configuration parameters that the receiving device is  
4 requested to use during online mode in a Wireless LL-network.

5 This command shall only be sent by a gateway in response to a received Configuration Response frame of a  
6 device during configuration mode.

7 Only gateways are requested to be capable of transmitting this command, RFD are required to be capable of  
8 receiving it.

9 The command payload of the Configuration Request Frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.m.

10



11

12

**Figure 103.m—Configuration request command MAC payload**

#### 13 7.3.11.3.2 MHR fields

##### 14 7.3.11.3.2.1 General

15 The configuration request command can be sent using both MAC command frames (7.2.2.4) or MAC  
16 command frames with shortened frame control (7.2.5.2.5).

##### 17 7.3.11.3.2.2 Using MAC command frames

18 The Frame Type subfield of the Frame Control field shall contain the value that indicates a MAC command  
19 frame, as shown in Table 120.

20 The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to 1 (8-bit short addressing) or  
21 3 (64-bit extended addressing).

22 The Destination Address field shall contain the value of source address of the corresponding Configuration  
23 Response frame.

##### 24 7.3.11.3.2.3 Using MAC command frames with shortened frame control

25 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
26 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
27 the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

##### 28 7.3.11.3.3 Command Frame Identifier field

29 The Command Frame Identifier field contains the value for the configuration response frame as defined in  
30 Table 123.

### 1 **7.3.11.3.4 Configuration Parameters field**

2 The Configuration Parameters field contains the new configuration parameters that are sent to the device in  
3 order to (re-)configure it. The configuration parameters consist of:

- 4 — full MAC address
- 5 — short MAC address
- 6 — transmission channel
- 7 — existence of management frames
- 8 — time slot duration
- 9 — assigned time slots

### 10 **7.3.11.4 Clear to Send (CTS) Shared Group Frame**

#### 11 **7.3.11.4.1 General**

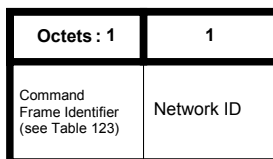
12 The Clear to Send Shared Group command indicates to the devices of the star network that they now may  
13 use the time slot for transmitting their own data with a simplified CSMA/CA.

14 This command shall only be sent by a gateway in a time slot after tSlotTxOwner has been elapsed and the  
15 slot owner is not transmitting.

16 Only gateways are requested to be capable of transmitting this command, devices are required to be capable  
17 of receiving it.

18 The command payload of the Clear to Send Shared Group frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure  
19 103.n.

20



21

22

**Figure 103.n—Clear to send shared group command MAC payload**

#### 23 **7.3.11.4.2 MHR fields**

24 The clear to send shared group command can be sent using MAC command frames with shortened frame  
25 control (7.2.5.2.5).

26 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
27 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
28 the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

#### 29 **7.3.11.4.3 Command Frame Identifier field**

30 The Command Frame Identifier field contains the value for the clear to send shared group frame as defined  
31 in Table 123.

#### 32 **7.3.11.4.4 Network ID field**

33 The Network ID field contains an identifier specific to the gateway.

## 1 **7.3.11.5 Request to Send (RTS) Frame**

### 2 **7.3.11.5.1 General**

3 The Request to Send command may be used by devices to indicate to the gateway and to the other devices  
4 of the star network that it wants to transmit data with a simplified CSMA/CA. The request to send frame is  
5 transmitted using a simplified CSMA/CA.

6 This command shall only be sent by a device in a time slot after tSlotOwner has been elapsed and a clear to  
7 send shared group frame has been received from the gateway.

8 Devices are requested to be capable of transmitting and receiving this command.

9 The command payload of the Request to Send frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.o.

10

Octets : 1	1	1
Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Short Originator Address	Network ID

11

12

**Figure 103.o—Request to send command MAC payload**

### 13 **7.3.11.5.2 MHR fields**

14 The request to send command can be sent using MAC command frames with shortened frame control (see  
15 7.2.5.2.5).

16 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
17 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
18 the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

### 19 **7.3.11.5.3 Command Frame Identifier field**

20 The Command Frame Identifier field contains the value for the request to send frame as defined in Table  
21 123.

### 22 **7.3.11.5.4 Short Originator Address**

23 The Short Originator Address field contains the 1-octet short address of the device sending this request to  
24 send frame.

### 25 **7.3.11.5.5 Network ID field**

26 The Network ID field contains an identifier specific to the gateway. It has to be identical to the Network ID  
27 of the corresponding received CTS shared group frame.

## 28 **7.3.11.6 Clear to Send (CTS) Frame**

### 29 **7.3.11.6.1 General**

30 The Clear to Send command indicates to a specific device of the star network that it may now use the time  
31 slot for transmitting its own data with a simplified CSMA/CA.

- 1 This command shall only be sent by a gateway in a time slot after tSlotOwner has been elapsed and the slot  
2 owner is not transmitting.
- 3 Only gateways are requested to be capable of transmitting this command, devices are required to be capable  
4 of receiving it.
- 5 The command payload of the Clear to Send Shared Group frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure  
6 103.p.

Octets : 1	1	1
Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Short Destination Address	Network ID

7  
8  
9 **Figure 103.p—Clear to send command MAC payload**

10 **7.3.11.6.2 MHR fields**

11 The clear to send command can be sent using MAC command frames with shortened frame control (see  
12 7.2.5.2.5).

13 In the Shortened Frame Control field, the Frame Type subfield shall contain the value that indicates a MAC  
14 frame with a shortened frame control, as shown in Table 120, and the Sub Frame Type subfield shall contain  
15 the value that indicates a MAC command frame, as shown in Table 122.a.

16

17 **7.3.11.6.3 Command Frame Identifier field**

18 The Command Frame Identifier field contains the value for the clear to send shared group frame as defined  
19 in Table 123.

20 **7.3.11.6.4 Short Destination Address**

21 The Short Destination Address field contains the 1-octet short address of the device to which this clear to  
22 send frame is directed.

23 **7.3.11.6.5 Network ID field**

24 The Network ID field contains an identifier specific to the gateway. It has to be identical to the Network ID  
25 of the corresponding received RTS frame.

26 **7.3.12 CM-commands**

27 **7.3.12.1 General**

28 Subclause 7.3 applies in addition.

29 **7.3.12.2 CM-Association request command**

30 **7.3.12.2.1 General**

31 Subclause 7.3.1 applies in addition but the association request command shall be formatted as illustrated in  
32 Figure 103.q.



octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	1	1
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Capability Information	Channel Offset

1 **Figure 103.q—Association request command format**

2 **7.3.12.2.2 MHR fields**

3 Subclause 7.3.1.1 applies.

4 **7.3.12.2.3 Capability Information field**

5 Subclause 7.3.1.2 applies but the Capability Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure  
6 103.r.

bits: 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Alternate PAN Coordinator	Device Type	Power Source	Receiver On When Idle	Channel Sequence Request	Reserved	Security Capability	Allocate Address

7 **Figure 103.r—CM-Capability Information field format**

8 The Channel Sequence Request subfield is 1 bit in length and shall be set to one if the PAN runs in both  
9 beacon-enabled mode and Channel Hopping mode.

10 **7.3.12.2.4 Channel Offset field**

11 The Channel Offset field is 8 bits in length and shall be set to the offset value of the unassociated device that  
12 wished to associate with a PAN, this value is specified by the next higher layer.

13 **7.3.12.3 CM-Association respond command**

14 **7.3.12.3.1 General**

15 Subclause 7.3.2 applies in addition but the CM-Association respond command shall be formatted as  
16 illustrated in Figure 103.s.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	2	1	1	Variable
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Short Address	Association Status	Channel Hopping Sequence Length	Channel Hopping Sequence

17 **Figure 103.s—CM-Association response command format**

18 **7.3.12.3.2 MHR fields**

19 Subclause 7.3.2.1 applies.

20 **7.3.12.3.3 Short Address field**

21 Subclause 7.3.2.2 applies.

22 **7.3.12.3.4 Association Status field**

23 Subclause 7.3.2.3 applies.

### 1 7.3.12.3.5 Channel Hopping Sequence Length field

2 The Channel Hopping Sequence Length field is 8 bits in length and shall specify the length of the channel  
3 hopping sequence used in the PAN, if the PAN runs in both beacon-enabled mode and Channel Hopping  
4 mode.

### 5 7.3.12.3.6 Channel Hopping Sequence field

6 The size of the Channel Hopping Sequence subfield is defined by the Channel Hopping Sequence Length  
7 subfield and the Channel Hopping Sequence field specifies the channel hopping sequence used in the PAN,  
8 if the PAN runs in both beacon-enabled mode and Channel Hopping mode.

## 9 7.3.12.4 EGTS handshake command

### 10 7.3.12.4.1 General

11 The EGTS handshake command is used by an associated device to request the allocation of a new EGTS or  
12 the deallocation, reallocation, or change of an existing EGTS from the corresponding device. Only devices  
13 that have a 16-bit short address less than 0xffff shall send this command.

14 This command is mandatory for CM-devices.

15 The EGTS request command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.t.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	Variable
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 82)	EGTS Characteristics

16 **Figure 103.t—EGTS handshake command format**

### 17 7.3.12.4.2 CM-MHR fields

18 The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode subfields of the Frame Control field  
19 shall both be set to two (i.e., 16-bit short addressing).

20 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and  
21 the Acknowledge Request subfield shall be set to one.

22 The Source PAN Identifier field shall contain the value of macPANId, and the Source Address field shall  
23 contain the value of macShortAddress.

24 For the EGTS handshake request command frame, the Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the  
25 identifier of the PAN to which to request for EGTS, and the Destination Address field shall contain the  
26 address of the Destination device to which the EGTS request command frame is being sent. For the EGTS  
27 handshake reply/notify command frame, the Destination PAN Identifier field shall be set to 0xffff (e.g.,  
28 broadcast PAN identifier), and the Destination Address field shall be set to 0xffff.

### 29 7.3.12.4.3 EGTS Characteristics fields

30 The EGTS Characteristics field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.u.

bit: 0	1-8	9	10-12	13-14	15	16-55	variable
Channel Diversity Mode	EGTS Length	EGTS Direction	EGTS Characteristics Type	EGTS Handshake Type	Prioritized Channel Access	EGTS Descriptor	EGTS ABT Specification

31 **Figure 103.u—EGTS Characteristics field format**

32 The ChannelDiversityMode subfield is 1 bit in length and shall be set to one of the non-reserved values  
33 listed in Table 125.a.

1

**Table 125.a—Values of the Channel Diversity Mode subfield**

Channel Diversity Mode value b <sub>0</sub>	Description
0	Channel Adaptation mode
1	Channel Hopping mode

2

3

The EGTS Length subfield is 8 bits in length and shall contain the number of superframe slots being requested for the EGTS.

4

5

The EGTS Direction subfield is 1 bit in length and shall indicate the direction of the EGTS handshake command.

6

7

The EGTS Characteristics Type subfield is 3 bits in length and shall be set to one of the non-reserved values listed in Table 125.b.

8

9

**Table 125.b—Values of the EGTS Characteristics Type subfield**

EGTS Characteristics Type value b <sub>2</sub> b <sub>1</sub> b <sub>0</sub>	Description
000	Deallocation
001	Allocation
010	Reallocation
011	Duplicated Allocation Notification
100	Robust EGTS Allocation
101	Reduce
110	Restart
111	Reserved

10

The EGTS Handshake Type subfield is 2 bits in length and shall be set to one of the non-reserved values listed in Table 125.c.

11

12

13

**Table 125.c—Values of the EGTS Handshake Type subfield**

EGTS Handshake Type value b <sub>1</sub> b <sub>0</sub>	Description
00	Request
01	Reply
10	Notify
11	Reserved

14

The Prioritized Channel Access subfield is 1 bit in length and shall be set to one if EGTS should be reserved as high priority, or set to zero if EGTS should be reserved as low priority. When the EGTS request command is used in the EGTS change procedure, the Prioritized Channel Access shall be set according to the original EGTS.

15

16

17

18

**7.3.12.4.4 EGTS Descriptor field**

19

The EGTS Descriptor field is 5 octets in length and shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.v.

20

bit: 0-15	16-31	32-39
Destination Address	EGTS slot identifier	EGTS Length

21

**Figure 103.v—Format of the EGTS Descriptor field**

The Device Short Address subfield is 2 octets in length and shall contain the short address of the device for which the EGTS allocate/ deallocate/ reallocate or change.

22

23

24

The EGTS slot identifier subfield is 2 octets in length and shall contain the channel number (1 octet in length) and the beginning time slot number (1 octet in length) of the EGTS that is to be allocated or deallocated.

25

26

1 The EGTS Length subfield is 1 octet in length and shall contain the number of superframe slots being  
 2 requested for the EGTS.

3 **7.3.12.4.5 EGTS ABT Specification field**

4 The EGTS ABT Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.w.

bit: 0-3	4-19	variable
EGTS ABT sub-block length	EGTS ABT sub-block index	EGTS ABT sub-block

5 **Figure 103.w—Format of the EGTS ABT Specification field**

6 The EGTS ABT sub-block length subfield is 4 bits in length and shall contain the length of the EGTS ABT  
 7 sub-block in units defined in Figure 103.x.

8 The EGTS ABT sub-block index subfield is 2 octets in length and shall indicate the beginning of the ABT  
 9 Sub-block in the entire ABT as illustrated in Figure 103.x.

10 The EGTS ABT sub-block shall contain the sub-block of the Allocation Bitmap Table as illustrated in Figure  
 11 103.x.

EGTS slot identifier = (channel, time slot)

Column = channel

Row = time slot

0 = vacant

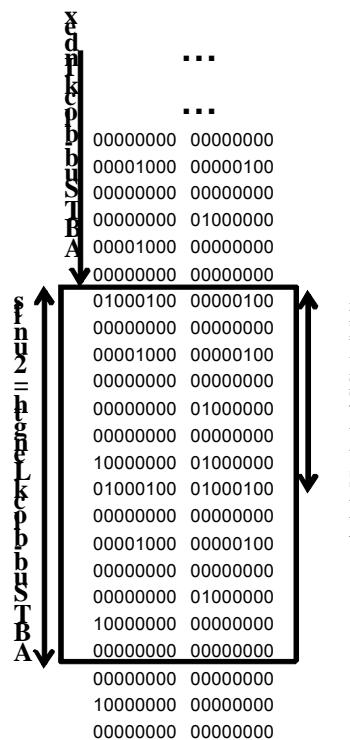
1 = occupied

If CAP reduction is off,

ABT sub-block unit = 14 octets  
 (7 timeslot x 16 channels)

If CAP reduction is on,

ABT sub-block unit = 30 octets  
 (15 timeslot x 16 channels)



12

13 **Figure 103.x—ABT Sub-block**

14 When the channel hopping mode is used to obtain channel diversity gain, i.e. ChannelDiversityMode bit  
 15 shall be set to '1', Timeslot Allocation Bitmap (TAB) is employed instead of EGTS ABT for handshaking.  
 16 TAB represents the usage of corresponding EGTS slots, a bit shall be set to '1' if the corresponding slot is  
 17 allocated to transmit or receive, or '0' if the slot is available. Similarly in channel adaptation, EGTS ABT  
 18 sub-block Index and EGTS ABT Sub-block length shall indicate the start position and the length of TAB  
 19 Sub-block. Thus, only sub block of whole TAB is exchanged for scheduling. This is illustrated in Figure  
 20 103.y.

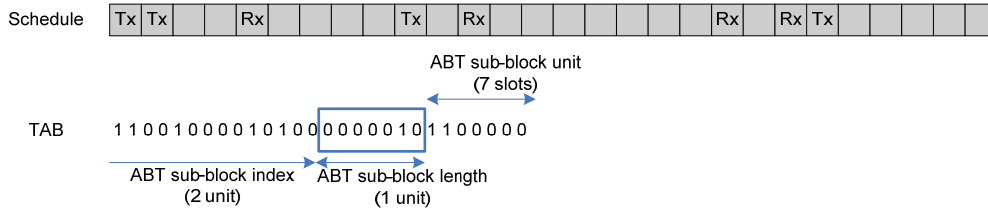


Figure 103.y—TAB Sub-block

7.3.12.5 EGTS information request command

The EGTS information request command is used by a source device that is requesting the timestamp and the EGTS parameters from the destination device.

The EGTS information request command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.z.

This command is mandatory for CM-devices.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 82)

Figure 103.z—EGTS information request command format

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode subfields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to two (e.g., 16-bit short addressing).

The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the Acknowledgment Request subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to one.

The Source PAN Identifier subfield shall contain the value of macPANId, and the Source Address subfield shall contain the value of macShortAddress.

The Destination PAN Identifier subfield shall contain the identifier of the PAN to which to request for EGTS information, and the Destination Address subfield shall contain the address of the Destination device to which the EGTS information request command frame is being sent.

7.3.12.6 EGTS information reply command

The EGTS information reply command frame is used by a destination device that is replying the timestamp and the EGTS information to the source device.

The EGTS information reply command frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.aa.

This command is mandatory for CM-devices.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	3	variable
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Timestamp	EGTS Characteristics (see 7.3.12.4.3)

Figure 103.aa—EGTS information reply command format

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode subfields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to two (e.g., 16-bit short addressing).

The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the Acknowledgment Request subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to one.

1 The Source PAN Identifier subfield shall contain the value of macPANId, and the Source Address subfield  
2 shall contain the value of macShortAddress.

3 The Destination PAN Identifier subfield shall contain the identifier of the PAN to which to reply the EGTS  
4 information, and the Destination Address subfield shall contain the address of the Destination device to  
5 which request the EGTS information.

### 6 7.3.12.7 Beacon allocation notification command

7 The beacon allocation notification command is used by a device that selects vacant Superframe Duration  
8 (SD) for using transmission of beacon frame.

9 The beacon allocation notification command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.bb.

10 This command is mandatory for CM-devices.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	2
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Allocation Beacon SD Index

11 **Figure 103.bb—Beacon allocation notification command format**

12 The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode subfields of the Frame Control field shall  
13 both be set to two (e.g., 16-bit short addressing).

14 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and  
15 the Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to zero.

16 The PAN ID Compression subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to one. In accordance with this  
17 value of the PAN ID Compression subfield, the Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the value of  
18 macPANId, while the Source PAN Identifier field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall be  
19 set to 0xffff. The Source Address field shall contain the value of macShortAddress.

20 The Allocation Beacon SD Index field is 2 octets in length and shall contain the allocating SD index number  
21 for beacon frame which is allocated to the Source device.

22

### 23 7.3.12.8 Beacon collision notification command

24 The beacon collision notification command is used by a device that detects the collision of beacon frame.

25 The beacon collision notification command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.cc.

26 This command is mandatory for CM-devices.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	2
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Collision SD Index

27 **Figure 103.cc—Beacon collision notification command format**

28 The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode subfields of the Frame Control field shall  
29 both be set to two (e.g., 16-bit short addressing).

30 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and  
31 the Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to one.

32 The PAN ID Compression subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to one. In accordance with this  
33 value of the PAN ID Compression subfield, the Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the value of

1 macPANId, while the Source PAN Identifier field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall be  
2 set to 0xffff. The Source Address field shall contain the value of macShortAddress.

3 The Conflict SD Index field is 2 octets in length and shall contain the SD index number of collision beacon  
4 frame.

## 5 **7.3.12.9 Link status report command**

### 6 **7.3.12.9.1 General**

7 The link status report command allows a source device to report its link quality parameters to a destination  
8 device.

9 This command shall only be sent by an associated device that wishes to report the link quality. All devices  
10 shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of receiving it.

11 The link status report command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.dd.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	variable
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Link Status Specification

12 **Figure 103.dd—Link status report command format**

13 The Link Status Specification fields shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.ee.

octets: 1	variable
Link Status Descriptor Count	Link Status List

14 **Figure 103.ee—Link status specification field format**

### 15 **7.3.12.9.2 MHR fields**

16 The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to two (16-bit extended  
17 addressing), and the Destination Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to the same mode as the destination  
18 device to which the status report command refers.

19 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to one, and the Acknowledgment  
20 Request subfield shall be set to one.

21 The Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the identifier of the PAN of the destination device to  
22 which to report the link status. The Destination Address field shall contain the address of the destination  
23 device to which the status report command is being sent.

24 The Source PAN Identifier field shall contain the value of macPANId, and the Source Address field shall  
25 contain the value of macShortAddress.

26 The Frame Type subfield in MHR shall be set to 100 and the Frame Version subfield should be set to 0x10.

### 27 **7.3.12.9.3 Link Status Descriptor Count field**

28 The Link Status Descriptor Count field is 1 octet in length and specifies the number of the Link Status  
29 Descriptors in the link status List field.

#### 1 7.3.12.9.4 Link Status List fields

2 The size of the Link Status List fields is defined by the values specified in the Link Status Descriptor Count  
3 field and contain the list of Link Status Descriptors that represents the link status of each link. The Link  
4 Status Descriptor shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.ff.

octets: 1	1	1	1
Channel	avgLQI	avgRSSI	Reserved

5 **Figure 103.ff—Link status Descriptor format**

6 The Channel subfield is 1 octet in length and specifies the channel index reported by the source device.

7 The avgLQI subfield is 1 octet in length and contains the average received LQI of the channel specified in  
8 Channel subfield within LinkStatusStatisticPeriod symbols.

9 The avgRSSI subfield is 1 octet in length and contains the average received signal power by ED  
10 measurement during a period of LinkStatusStatisticPeriod symbols. The avgRSSI measurement shall be  
11 performed for each received packet, and the use of the avgRSSI result by the next higher layer is not  
12 specified in this standard.

13

#### 14 7.3.12.10 Multi-channel beacon request command

15 The multi-channel beacon request command is used by a device that is performing asymmetric multi-channel  
16 active scan.

17 The multi-channel beacon request command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.gg. This  
18 command is mandatory for CM-devices.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	4
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Scan Channels

19 **Figure 103.gg—Multi-channel beacon request command format**

20 The Destination Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to two (e.g., 16-bit short  
21 addressing), and the Source Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to zero (e.g., source addressing  
22 information not present).

23 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and  
24 the Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to zero.

25 The Destination PAN Identifier subfield shall contain the broadcast PAN identifier (i.e., 0xffff). The  
26 Destination Address subfield shall contain the broadcast short address (i.e., 0xffff).

27 The Scan Channels subfield is represented in 27-bit bitmaps. The 27 bits (b0, b1,... b26) indicate which  
28 channels are to be scanned (1 = scan, 0 = do not scan) for each of the 27 channels supported by the  
29 ChannelPage parameter.

#### 30 7.3.12.11 Multi-channel hello command

##### 31 7.3.12.11.1 General

32 The multi-channel hello command is used to inform neighboring devices of the device's designated channel.

33 The multi-channel beacon request command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.hh. This  
34 command is mandatory for CM-devices.



octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	1
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Hello Specification

1 **Figure 103.hh—Multi-channel hello command format**

2 **7.3.12.11.2 MHR fields**

3 The Destination Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to two (e.g., 16-bit short  
4 addressing), and the Source Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to zero (e.g., source addressing  
5 information not present).

6 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and  
7 the Acknowledgment Request subfield shall be set to zero.

8 The Destination PAN Identifier subfield shall contain the broadcast PAN identifier (i.e., 0xffff). The  
9 Destination Address subfield shall contain the broadcast short address (i.e., 0xffff).

10 **7.3.12.11.3 Hello Specification field**

11 The Hello Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.ii.

bits: 5	1	2
Designated Channel Index	Hello Reply Request	Reserved

12 **Figure 103.ii—Hello specification field format**

13 The Designated Channel Index subfield is 5 bits in length and shall contain the designated logical channel  
14 index number of the device.

15 The Hello Reply Request subfield is 1 bit in length and shall indicate whether the multi-channel hello  
16 command needs a hello reply. If the Hello Reply Request bit is set to '1', the device shall transmit a hello  
17 reply upon receiving the hello command.

18 **7.3.12.11.4 Multi-channel hello reply command**

19 The multi-channel hello reply command is used to

20 **TBD ...**

21 The multi-channel beacon request command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 65Q.

22 **TBD ...**

Comment [youcy4]: The format and description of the hello reply command should be added

24 **7.3.12.12 Channel probe command**

25 **7.3.12.12.1 General**

26 The channel probe command is used to check the link quality of the specified channel.

27 The channel probe command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.jj. This command is mandatory  
28 for CM-device.

octets: (see 7.2.2.4)	1	2
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)	Channel Probe Specification

1 **Figure 103.jj—Channel probe command format**

2 **7.3.12.12.2 MHR fields**

3 The Source Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to two (16-bit extended  
4 addressing), and the Destination Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to the same mode as the destination  
5 device to which the channel probe command refers.

6 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero, and the Acknowledgment  
7 Request subfield shall be set to one.

8 The Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the identifier of the PAN of the destination device to  
9 which to check the link quality. The Destination Address field shall contain the address of the destination  
10 device to which the channel probe command is being sent.

11 The Source PAN Identifier field shall contain the value of macPANId, and the Source Address field shall  
12 contain the value of macShortAddress.

13 **7.3.12.12.3 Channel Probe Specification field**

14 The Channel Probe Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 65S.

bits: 2	5	5	4
Channel Probe Subtype	Designated Channel	Probe Channel	Reserved

15 **Figure 103.kk—Channel Probe specification format**

16 The Channel Probe Subtype subfield is 2 bits in length and shall be set to one of the non-reserved values  
17 listed in Table 125.d.

18 **Table 125.d—Values of the Channel Probe Subtype subfield**

Channel Probe subtype value $b_1b_0$	Description
00	Request
01	Reply
10	Probe
11	Reserved

19  
20 The Designated Channel subfield is 5 bits in length and indicates the originator's designated channel.

21 The Probe Channel subfield is 5 bits in length and indicates the channel that needs to be probed.

22 **7.3.13 SUN-commands**

23 **7.3.13.1 SUN-Enhanced Beacon request command**

24 **7.3.13.1.1 General**

25 The enhanced beacon request command is intended to be used by a SUN-device to locate a subset of all  
26 coordinators within its POS during an active scan.

27 This command is optional for an FFD and an RFD.

28 The enhanced beacon request command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 103.ll.

Octets:7	1	1	0/1	0/1	Variable
<b>MHR fields</b>	<b>Command Frame Identifier (see Table 123)</b>	<b>Request Field</b>	<b>Link Quality</b>	<b>Percent filter</b>	<b>Extended Payload</b>

1 **Figure 103.II—SUN-Enhanced Beacon request command**

2 The Destination Addressing Mode subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to two (i.e., 16-bit short  
3 addressing), and the Source Addressing Mode subfield shall be set to zero (i.e., source addressing  
4 information not present).

5 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

6 The Acknowledgment Request subfield and Security Enabled subfield shall be set to zero. If the enhanced  
7 beacon request is being sent on a particular PAN Identifier that is not the broadcast PAN identifier the  
8 Security Enable subfield may be set to 1, otherwise it shall be set to 0.

9 The Destination PAN Identifier field shall contain the any appropriate PAN identifier. If the broadcast PAN  
10 identifier is used, any device may respond however if a specific PAN identifier is used only devices using  
11 that PAN identifier will respond to the enhanced beacon request.

12 The Destination Address field shall contain the broadcast short address (i.e., 0xffff).

13 **7.3.13.1.2 Request Field**

14 **7.3.13.1.2.1 General**

15 The request field is a 1 octet field indicating what optional request discriminators are included in the  
16 Enhanced Beacon Request Command Payload. The Request Field is as shown in Table 125.e.

17 **Table 125.e—Request field coding**

Bit	SubField
0	Permit Joining On
1	LinkQuality
2	Percent filter
3 - 6	Reserved
7	Extended Payload

18  
19 For any bits set in the request field the following is done.

20 **7.3.13.1.2.2 Permit Joining On**

21 Only devices with permit joining on shall respond to the enhanced beacon request.

22 **7.3.13.1.2.3 LinkQuality Level**

23 Following the Request field the enhanced beacon request will include a field containing a value for  
24 LinkQuality. The device will respond to the enhanced beacon request if the MCPS-DATA.indication  
25 indicates a mpduLinkQuality equal or lower than this value (where lower values represent higher quality  
26 links).

#### 1 **7.3.13.1.2.4 Percent filter**

2 Following the Request Field a byte will be included of a scaled value from 0x00 to 0x64 representing zero to  
 3 100 percent probability for a given device to respond to the enhanced beacon request. The device will then  
 4 randomly determine if it is to respond to the enhanced beacon request based on meeting this probability. For  
 5 example if the probability is set to 10% then 1 of 10 devices would randomly be expected to respond.

#### 6 **7.3.13.1.2.5 Extended Payload**

7 If this bit is set the extended payload field shall be included in the enhanced beacon request. The extended  
 8 payload should be provided as the MSDU in the MCPS-DATA.indication to the local SSCS entity in which  
 9 case the SSCS entity would be responsible for handling beacon responses based on data in this extended  
 10 payload.

### 11 **7.3.14 LE-commands**

#### 12 **7.3.14.1 Wakeup Frame**

13 Figure 103.mm illustrates the format of wakeup frame.

<b>Octets: 2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>FCF</b>	<b>DSN</b>	<b>DestPAN</b>	<b>DestAddr</b>	<b>RZTime</b>	<b>FCS</b>

14 **Figure 103.mm— Format of wakeup frame command**

15 The FCF is set as follows :

- 16 — Frame type = 100
- 17 — Security enabled = 0
- 18 — Frame pending = 0
- 19 — Ack request = 0
- 20 — PAN ID compression = 0
- 21 — Dest addressing mode = 0x2
- 22 — Frame version = 0x1
- 23 — Source addressing mode = 0x0

24 The payload of this frame contains a 2-octet Rendezvous Time (RZTime) which is the expected length of  
 25 time in milliseconds between the end of the transmission of the wakeup frame and the beginning of the  
 26 transmission of the payload frame. This number is automatically filled in by the MAC layer when wakeup  
 27 frames are constructed. The last wakeup frame in a wakeup sequence must have RZTime = 0.

#### 28 **7.3.14.2 New optional MHR field**

29 The reserved FCF reserved bit 7 is renamed to the CSL sync bit. When the bit is set to 1, a 4-octet optional  
 30 CSL sync field is added to the end of the current MHR. Figure 103.nn illustrates the format of the CSL sync  
 31 field.

<b>Octets: 2</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>CSL Phase</b>	<b>CSL Period</b>

1 **Figure 103.nn— Format of optional MHR field**

2 They represent the CSL phase and period of the transmitting device of the frame. This information helps  
 3 eliminate or reduce the wakeup sequence for subsequent transmissions from the receiving device.

4

5 **7.3.14.3 Secure Acknowledgement Frame**

6 Figure 103.oo illustrates the format of an secure acknowledgement frame.

<b>Octets:</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>0/5/6/10/14</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>DSN</b>	<b>Dest</b>	<b>DestAddr</b>	<b>Auxiliary</b>	<b>CSL</b>	<b>CSL</b>	<b>FCS</b>
<b>FCF</b>		<b>PAN</b>		<b>security</b>	<b>Phase</b>	<b>Period</b>	
				<b>header</b>			

7 **Figure 103.oo— Format of secure acknowledgement frame**

8 The FCF is set as follows :

- 9 — Frame type = 101
- 10 — Security enabled = 0 or 1
- 11 — Frame pending = 0
- 12 — Ack request = 0
- 13 — PAN ID compression = 0
- 14 — CSL sync = 1
- 15 — Dest addressing mode = 0x2
- 16 — Frame version = 0x1
- 17 — Source addressing mode = 0x0

18 The payload of this frame contains 2-octet CSL Phase and 2-octet CSL Period. They represent the CSL  
 19 phase and period of the receiving device. This information helps the transmitting device eliminate or reduce  
 20 the wakeup sequence for subsequent transmissions to the same destination.

21 **7.3.14.4 RIT data request command**

22 **7.3.14.4.1 General**

23 The RIT data request command allows a device to request data from its neighboring devices in the RIT  
 24 mode. This command shall only be sent and received in the RIT mode (macRitPeriod : non zero value). This  
 25 command is optional and applicable for FFD only. The RIT data request command shall be formatted as  
 26 illustrated in Figure 103.pp.

<b>Octets : (see 7.2.2.4)</b>	<b>1</b>
MHR fields	Command Frame Identifier ( see Table 123 )

27 **Figure 103.pp— Format of RIT data request command**

1 **7.3.14.4.2 MHR fields**

2 The Frame Pending subfield of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and  
 3 the Acknowledgement Request subfield shall also be set to zero. All other subfields shall be set  
 4 appropriately according to the intended use of the command frame.

5

6 **7.4 MAC constants and PIB attributes**7 **7.4.1 MAC constants**8 **7.4.2 MAC PIB attributes**

9 *Insert after the heading of 7.4.2 the following subclause header.*

10 **7.4.2.1 General**

11 *Insert before 7.5 the following subclauses.*

12 **7.4.2.2 PA-specific MAC PIB attributes**13 **7.4.2.2.1 General**

14 Subclause 7.4.2.1 applies except that the attributes macMinBE and macMaxBE in Table 127 shall be  
 15 according to Table 127.a and an additional attribute macDisconnectTime is required, see Table 127.a.

16 **Table 127.a—PA-specific MAC PIB attributes**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
macMinBE	0x4f	Integer	0– macMaxBE	The minimum value of the backoff exponent (BE) in the CSMA-CA algorithm or the PA-CA algorithm. See 7.5.1.4 for a detailed explanation of the backoff exponent. See 7.5.4.2 for use of the backoff exponent in PA-mode.	3/1
macMaxBE	0x57	Integer	3–8	The maximum value of the backoff exponent, BE, in the CSMA-CA algorithm or the PA-CA algorithm. See 7.5.1.4 for a detailed explanation of the backoff exponent. See 7.5.4.2 for use of the backoff exponent in PA-mode.	5/7
macDisconnectTime	0x64	Integer	0x00- 0xFFFF	Time to send out Disconnect frames before disconnecting.	

17

18 **7.4.2.2.2 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macSlotframeTable**

19 The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for macSlotframeTable are presented in Table 127.b.

1

**Table 127.b—PA-MAC PIB attributes for macSlotframeTable**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
slotframeId	0x64	Integer	0x00-0xFF	Identifier of the slotframe	
slotframeSize	0x65	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Number of timeslots in the slotframe	
activeFlag	0x66	Boolean	0x0-0x1	Flag indicating if the slotframe is currently activated	
channelPage	0x67	Integer	0x00-0x1F	Channel Page of channels used in this slotframe	
channelMap	0x68	Bitmap		Bitmap of active channels.	

2

3 **7.4.2.2.3 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macLinkTable**

4 The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for macLinkTable are presented in Table 127.c.

5

**Table 127.c— PA-MAC PIB attributes for macLinkTable**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
linkId	0x69	Integer	0x00-0xFF	Identifier of Link	
linkOption	0x6a	Bitmap	0x00-0x7	Flags indicating whether the link is used for transmit, receive, or shared transmissions:	
linkType	0x6b	Integer	0x00-0x2	Enumeration indicating the type of link: Normal, Join, or Advertising	
slotframeId	0x6c	Integer	0x00-0xFF	Identifier of Slotframe to which this link belongs	
nodeAddress	0x6d	IEEE address	16 bit address	Address of the node connected to this link	
timeslot	0x6e	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Timeslot for this link	
channelOffset	0x6f		0x00-0xFF	Channel offset for this link	

6

7 **7.4.2.2.4 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macTimeslotTemplate**

8 The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for macTimeslotTemplate are presented in Table 127.d.

1

**Table 127.d—PA-MAC PIB attributes for macTimeslotTemplate**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
Timeslot Template Id	0x70	Integer	0x0-0xF	Identifier of Timeslot Template	
TsCCAOffset	0x71	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	The time between the beginning of timeslot and start of CCA operation	
TsCCA	0x72	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Duration of CCA	
TsTxOffset	0x73	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	The time between the beginning of the timeslot and the start of packet transmission	
TsRxOffset	0x74	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Beginning of the timeslot to when the receiver must be listening	
TsRxAckDelay	0x75	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	End of packet to when the transmitter must listen for Acknowledgment	
TsTxAckDelay	0x76	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	End of packet to start of Acknowledgment	
TsRxWait	0x77	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	The time to wait for start of packet	
TsAckWait	0x78	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	The minimum time to wait for start of an Acknowledgment	
TsRxTx	0x79	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Transmit to Receive turnaround (12 symbols)	
TsMaxAck	0x7a	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Transmission time to send Acknowledgment	
TsMaxTx	0x7b	Integer	0x0000-0xFFFF	Transmission time to send the maximum length packet (133 bytes)	

2

3 **7.4.2.2.5 PA-MAC PIB attributes for macHoppingSequence**4 **To be jointly defined with Channel Hopping/Channel Diversity subgroup.**

5 The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for macHoppingSequence are presented in Table 127.c.

6

**Table 127.e— PA-MAC PIB attributes for macHoppingSequence**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default

7

8

9 **7.4.2.3 LL-specific MAC PIB attributes**

10 Subclause 7.4.2.1 applies and additional attributes are required, see Table 127.a.



1

**Table 127.f—LL-specific MAC PIB attributes**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
macFAlowLatencyPAN	0x7c	Boolean	TRUE or FALSE	Indicates that the PAN is using the mechanisms as described in 5.3.3, 5.5.1.2, and related clauses.	Set by configuration
macFAnumTimeSlots	0x7d	Integer	0 ... 254	Number of time slots within superframe excluding time slot for beacon frame	20
macFAnumSensorTS	0x7e	Integer	0 ... macFAnum-TimeSlots	Number of sensor time slots within superframe for unidirectional communication (uplink)	20
macFAnumRetransmitTS	0x7f	Integer	0 ... macFAnum-SensorTS/2	Number of sensor time slots reserved for retransmission (see 5.5.1.2 and 7.5.1.6.1)	0
macFAnumActuatorTS	0x80	Integer	0 ... macFAnum-TimeSlots	Number of actuator time slots within superframe for bidirectional communication	0
macFAmgmtTS	0x81	Boolean	TRUE or FALSE	Indicates existence of management time slots in Online Mode	FALSE
macFAlowLatencyNWid	0x82	Integer	0x00–0xff	The 8-bit identifier of the LLNW on which the device is operating. If this value is 0xff, the device is not associated.	0xff

2

**7.4.2.4 CM-specific MAC PIB attributes**

Subclause 7.4.2.1 applies and additional attributes are required, see Table 127.g.

5

**Table 127.g—CM-specific MAC PIB attributes**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
Channel Index		Integer	0-31	Specifies the Channel index of the channel's link status reported by the source device.	
avgLQI		Integer	0x00-0xff	A characterization of the link quality between a source device and a destination device on the channel defined by Channel Index, the measurement shall be performed for each received packet during a period of <i>LinkStatusStatisticPeriod</i> .	
avgRSSI		Integer	0-255	Average RSSI.	

6

**7.4.2.5 LE-specific MAC PIB attributes**

Subclause 7.4.2.1 applies and additional attributes are required, see Table 127.h.

8

1

**Table 127.h—LE-specific MAC PIB attributes**

Attribute	Identifier	Type	Range	Description	Default
macCSLPeriod		Integer	0 ... 65535	CSL sampled listening period in milliseconds. 0 means always listening, i.e., CSL off.	0
macCSLMaxPeriod		Integer	0 ... 65535	Maximum CSL sampled listening period in milliseconds in the entire PAN. 0 means macCSLMaxPeriod is the same as macCSLPeriod.	0
macCSLChannelMask		Integer		32-bit bitmap relative to phyCurrentPage of channels. It represents the list of channels CSL operates on. 0 means CSL operates on phyCurrentChannel of phyCurrentPage.	0
macCSLFramePendingWaitT		Integer		Number of milliseconds to keep the receiver on after receiving a payload frame with FCF frame pending bit set to 1.	
macSecAckWaitDuration		Integer		The maximum number of symbols to wait for a secure acknowledgement frame to arrive following a transmitted data frame.	
macRitPeriod		Integer	0x000000 - 0xffff	The interval (in unit periods) for periodical transmission of RIT data request command in RIT mode. The unit period is aBaseSuperframeDuration. 0 means RIT is off	0
macRitDataWaitPeriod		Integer	0x00 – 0xff	The maximum time (in unit period) to wait for Data frame after transmission of RIT data request command frame in RIT mode. The unit period is aBaseSuperframeDuration.	0
macRitTxWaitTime		Integer	macRitPeriod - 0xffff	The maximum time (in unit periods) that a transaction is stored by a device in RIT mode. The unit period is aBaseSuperframeDuration.	0

2

## 3 7.5 MAC functional description

### 4 7.5.1 Channel access

#### 5 7.5.1.1 Superframe structure

6 *Insert after the first paragraph the following text.*

7 For LL-applications is required an additional superframe structure with beacons using a shortened frame  
8 control, see 7.5.1.6.

9

#### 10 7.5.1.4 CSMA-CA algorithm

11 *Insert after the heading of 7.5.1.4 the following subclause.*

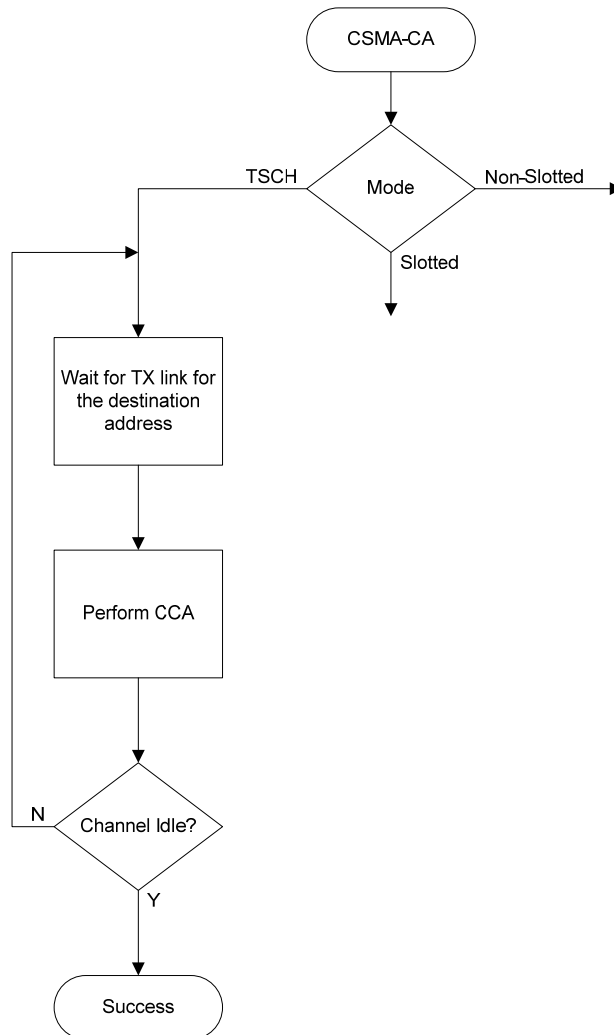
##### 12 7.5.1.4.1 General

13 *Insert before 7.5.2 the following subclauses.*

### 1 7.5.1.4.2 PA-CCA Algorithm

2 When a device is operating in the PA-mode (see 7.1.21.3) the CCA is used to promote coexistence with  
 3 other users of the radio channel. For other devices in the same network the start time of transmissions,  
 4 TxTxOffset, is closely aligned making intra-network collision avoidance using CCA ineffective. The PA-  
 5 devices also do channel hopping so there is no backoff period used when CCA prevents a transmission.

6 When a device has a packet to transmit, it waits for a link it can transmit it in. If CCA has been enabled, the  
 7 MAC requests the PHY to perform a CCA at the designated time in the timeslot, TxCCAOffset, without any  
 8 backoff delays. Figure 107.a extend Figure 107 for the PA-mode.



9  
 10 **Figure 107.a—PA-CSMA-CA Algorithm**

### 11 7.5.1.4.3 PA-CA Algorithm

12 Shared links (links with the linkOption shared bit set) are intentionally assigned to more than one device for  
 13 transmission. This can lead to collisions and result in a transmission failure detected by not receiving an  
 14 acknowledgement. To reduce the probability of repeated collisions when the packets are retransmitted a  
 15 retransmission backoff algorithm shall be implemented for shared links.

16 When a packet is transmitted on a shared link for which an acknowledgement is expected and none is  
 17 received, the transmitting device shall invoke the PA- CA retransmission algorithm. Subsequent  
 18 retransmissions may be in either shared links or dedicated links. This backoff algorithm has the following  
 19 properties:

- 1  
2 — The retransmission backoff wait applies only to the transmission on shared links. There is no  
3 waiting for transmission on dedicated links.  
4 — The retransmission backoff is calculated in the number of shared link transmission links.  
5 — The backoff window increases for each consecutive failed transmission in a shared link.  
6 — A successful transmission in a shared link resets the backoff window to the minimum value.  
7 — The backoff window does not change when a transmission is a failure in a dedicated link.  
8 — The backoff window does not change when a transmission is successful in a dedicated link and there  
9 transmission queue is still not empty afterwards.  
10 — The backoff window is reset to the minimum value if the transmission in a dedicated link is  
11 successful and the transmit queue is then empty.  
12

13 In PA-mode, backoff is calculated in shared links, so the CSMA-CA *aUnitBackoffPeriod* is not used.

14 *macMaxBE* and *macMinBE* have different default values when the device is in PA-mode (see table 86).

15 The device shall use an exponential backoff mechanism analogous to that described in 7.5.1.4.1. A device  
16 upon encountering a transmission failure in a shared link shall initialize the backoff exponent (BE) to  
17 *macMinBE*. The MAC sublayer shall delay for a random number in the range 0 to  $2^{BE}-1$  shared links (on  
18 any slotframe) before attempting a retransmission on a shared link. Retransmission on a dedicated link may  
19 occur at any time. For each successive failure on a shared link, the device should increase the backoff  
20 exponent until the backoff exponent = *macMaxBE*. Successful transmission on a shared link resets the  
21 backoff exponent to *macMinBE*.

22 If an acknowledgment is still not received after *macMaxFrameRetries* retransmissions, the MAC sublayer  
23 shall assume the transmission has failed and notify the next higher layer of the failure.

24

#### 25 7.5.1.4.4 LL-Simplified CSMA-CA

26 This subclause defines a simplified CSMA-CA algorithm that is used during Management Time slots and  
27 Shared Group Timeslots in low latency networks.

28

29 The simplified CSMA-CA is a slotted CSMA-CA mechanism and follows the same algorithm as described  
30 in 7.5.1.4.1. However, some MAC PIB attributes have different default values as shown in Table 127.i.

31 **Table 127.i—Default values for MAC PIB attributes for slotted CSMA-CA in LL-Networks**

MAC PIB attribute	Default Value in Low Latency Networks
<b>macMinBE</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>macMaxBE</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>macMaxCSMABackoffs</b>	<b>0</b>

32

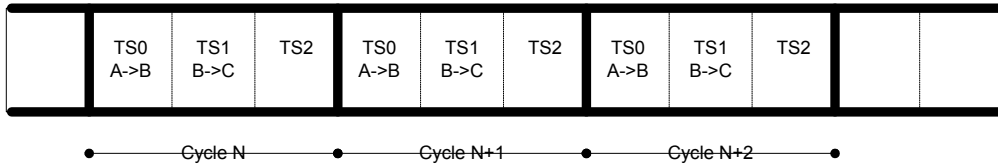
33 The backoff slots of *aUnitBackoffPeriod* symbols are aligned with the start of the beacon transmission in  
34 management time slots and with *tSlotTxOwner* in shared group time slots.

1 **7.5.1.5 PA-Slotframe structure**

2 **7.5.1.5.1 General**

3 A slotframe is a collection of timeslots repeating in time. The number of timeslots in a given slotframe  
 4 (slotframe size) determines how often each timeslot repeats, thus setting a communication schedule for  
 5 nodes that use the timeslots. When a slotframe is created, it is associated with a slotframe ID for  
 6 identification. Every new slotframe instance in time is called a slotframe cycle. Figure 107.b shows how  
 7 nodes may communicate in a sample three-timeslot slotframe. Nodes A and B communicate during timeslot  
 8 0, nodes B and C communicate during timeslot 1, and timeslot 2 is not being used. Every three timeslots, the  
 9 schedule repeats. The total number of timeslots that has elapsed since the start of the network is called the  
 10 Absolute Slot Number (ASN). The pair-wise assignment of a directed communication between devices in a  
 11 given timeslot on a given channel offset is a link. Logical channel selection in a link is made by taking  
 12 (Absolute Slot Number + channel offset) % Number of channels. Mapping of logical channel to physical  
 13 channel is to be jointly defined with Channel Hopping/Channel Diversity subgroup

14



15 **Figure 107.b—Example of a three-timeslot slotframe**

16 Several performance parameters are determined by slotframe size and how timeslots are assigned within a  
 17 slotframe for communication. In general, shorter slotframes result in lower latency and increased bandwidth,  
 18 but at the expense of increased power consumption. Long slotframes generally result in higher latency and  
 19 lower bandwidth, but power consumption is reduced and the number of communication resources (links) is  
 20 increased. This affects the scale of the network.

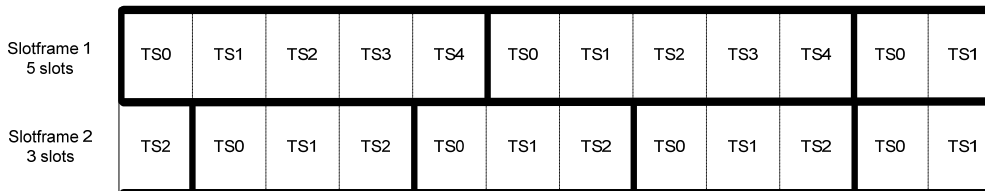
21

22 **7.5.1.5.2 Multiple slotframes**

23 A given network using timeslot-based access may contain several concurrent slotframes of different sizes.  
 24 Slotframe size defines the bandwidth of a timeslot. A timeslot within a slotframe of a particular size repeats  
 25 twice as fast as a timeslot within a slotframe that is twice as long, thus allowing for double throughput on  
 26 any given link. Multiple slotframes may be used to define a different communication schedule for various  
 27 groups of nodes or to run the entire network at different duty cycles.

28 A network device may participate in one or more slotframes simultaneously, and not all devices need to  
 29 participate in all slotframes. By configuring a network device to participate in multiple overlapping  
 30 slotframes of different sizes, it is possible to establish different communication schedules and connectivity  
 31 matrices that all work at the same time.

32 Slotframes can be added, removed, and modified while the network is running. Even though this is the case,  
 33 all slotframes logically start in the same place in time. Cycle 0, timeslot 0 of every slotframe occurs at the  
 34 beginning of epoch, which is determined by the network device that starts the network. Because of this,  
 35 timeslots in different slotframes are always aligned, even though beginnings and ends of slotframes may not  
 36 be (see Figure 107.c). Because all slotframes begin at the same time, it is always possible to identify time of  
 37 a given slotframe cycle and timeslot, and ASN is the same across slotframes.

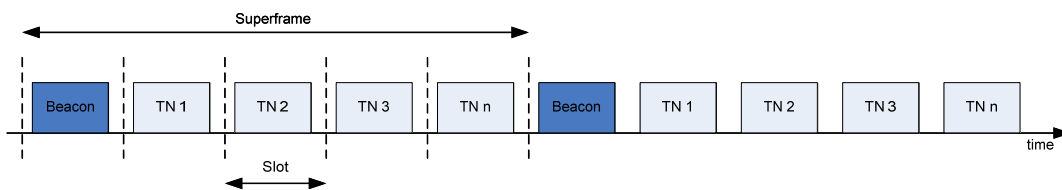


38 **Figure 107.c—Multiple slotframes in the network**

1 **7.5.1.6 LL-Superframe structure**

2 **7.5.1.6.1 General Structure of Superframe**

3 The superframe is divided into a beacon slot and *macFAnumTimeSlots* base time slots of equal length, see  
 4 Figure 107.d.



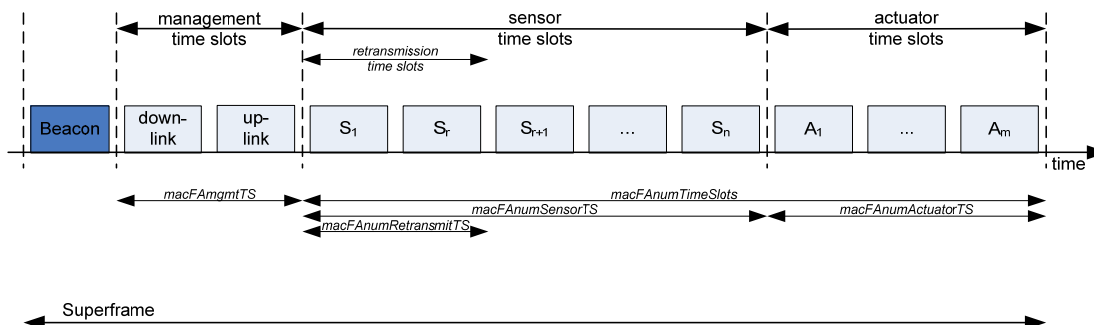
5  
 6 **Figure 107.d—Superframe with dedicated time slots**

7  
 8 The first time slot of each superframe contains a beacon frame. The beacon frame is used for  
 9 synchronization with the superframe structure. It is also used for re-synchronization of devices that went into  
 10 power save or sleep mode.

11 The remaining time slots are assigned to specific devices of the network. Each time slot may have assigned a  
 12 so-called slot owner. The slot owner has access privileges in the time slot (dedicated time slot). There is no  
 13 explicit addressing necessary inside the frames if the slot owner transmits in its time slot. The determination  
 14 of the sender is achieved through the number of the time slot. More than one device can be assigned to a  
 15 time slot (shared group time slot). The devices use a contention-based access method (modified CSMA/CA)  
 16 a simple addressing scheme.

17 Multiple adjacent base time slots can be concatenated to a single, larger time slot.

18 As shown in Figure 107.e, there is a specific order in the meaning or usage of the time slots.



19  
 20 **Figure 107.e—Usage and order of slots in a superframe**

- 21  
 22 — Beacon Time Slot: always there (see 5.2)  
 23 — Management Time Slots: one time slot downlink, one time slot uplink, existence is configurable in  
 24 *macFAnumTimeSlots* during setup (see 5.3)  
 25 — Time slots for sensors: *macFAnumSensorTS* time slots uplink (uni-directional communication),  
 26 *macFAnumRetransmitTS* time slots at the beginning can be reserved for retransmissions (see 5.4)  
 27 — Time slots for actuators: *macFAnumActuatorTS* time slots uplink / downlink (bi-directional  
 28 communication) (see 5.5)

### 1 7.5.1.6.2 Beacon Time Slot

2 The beacon time slot is reserved for the gateway to indicate the start of a superframe with the transmission of  
 3 a beacon. The beacon is used to synchronize the devices and to indicate the current transmission mode. The  
 4 beacon contains also acknowledgements for the data transmitted in the last superframe.

5 The beacon time slot is available in every superframe.

### 6 7.5.1.6.3 Management Time Slots

7 The first portion of a superframe after the beacon time slot is formed by the management time slots, i.e. the  
 8 downlink/uplink management time slots.

9 The downlink direction is defined as sending data *to* the device (sensor, actuator). The uplink direction is  
 10 defined as sending data *from* the device (sensor, actuator).

11 Management time slots provide a mechanism for bidirectional transmission of management data in downlink  
 12 and uplink direction. Downlink and uplink time slots are provided in equal number in a superframe. There  
 13 are two management time slots per superframe at maximum. Management down-/uplink time slots are  
 14 implemented as shared group access time slots.

15 Management down-/uplink time slots are used in discovery and configuration mode and are optional in the  
 16 online mode.

### 17 7.5.1.6.4 Sensor Time Slots

18 After the management time slots, time slots for the transmission of sensor data are contained in a  
 19 superframe. Sensor time slots allow for unidirectional communication (uplink) only.

20 The first *macFAnumRetransmitTS* of the *macFAnumSensorTS* sensor time slots are dedicated time slots for  
 21 retransmissions of failed uplink transmission attempts in dedicated time slots of the previous superframe.  
 22 The dynamic assignment of nodes to retransmission time slots is described in 7.5.9.4.

### 23 7.5.1.6.5 Actuator Time Slots

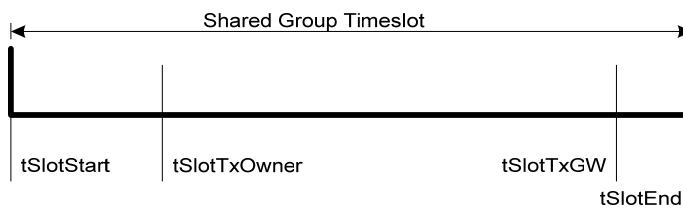
24 Actuator time slots allow for bidirectional communication between the gateway and the device (actuator).  
 25 The direction of the communication is signalled in the beacon as described in 7.2.5.2.2. Actuator time slots  
 26 are used for the transmission of device data to the gateway (uplink) as well as of actuator information from  
 27 the gateway to the device (downlink).

28

### 29 7.5.1.6.6 Channel access within time slots

30 Each time slot is described by four time attributes as illustrated in Figure 107.f and described in Table 127.j.

31



32

33

**Figure 107.f—Time attributes of time slots**

1

**Table 127.j—Time attributes of time slots**

Attribute	Description
tSlotStart	starting time of time slot
tSlotTxOwner	end time of privileged access by device that owns the time slot
tSlotTxGW	if time slot is unused, gateway can use the time slot
tSlotEnd	end time of time slot

2

3

4

From tSlotStart till tSlotTxOwner, the device that owns the slot, the slot owner, has exclusive access to the time slot.

5

6

From tSlotTxOwner till tSlotTxGW, any device may use the time slot with a modified CSMA/CA access scheme as described in 7.5.1.5, if the time slot is not used by the slot owner.

7

From tSlotTxGW till tSlotEnd, the gateway may use the time slot, if the time slot is still unused.

8

9

10

Dedicated time slots are reserved for a single device (slot owner). This is achieved by setting tSlotTxOwner and tSlotTxGW to tSlotEnd. A dedicated time slot allows the transmission of exactly one packet. Dedicated time slots are only used during online mode (see 7.5.9.4).

11

12

Shared group time slots with contention-based access for every allowed device can be achieved by setting tSlotTxOwner to tSlotStart.

13

### 7.5.1.7 LE-Functional description

14

#### 7.5.1.7.1 LE-Contention access period (CAP)

15

When macCSLPeriod is set to non-zero, CSL is deployed in CAP.

16

macRitPeriod shall not be set to non-zero in a beacon-enabled PAN.

17

#### 7.5.1.7.2 LE-Scanning through channels

18

19

20

When macCSLPeriod is set to non-zero, CSL is deployed in channel scans. When macCSLMaxPeriod is set to non-zero, each coordinator broadcasts beacon frames with wakeup sequence. This allows devices to perform channel scans with low duty cycles.

21

22

## 7.5.2 Starting and maintaining PANs

23

### 7.5.2.5 Device discovery

24

*Insert before 7.5.3 the following subclause.*

25

### 7.5.2.6 PA-network formation

26

#### 7.5.2.6.1 Overview

27

There are two components of network formation in the PA-network:

28

— advertising and

29

— joining.

30

31

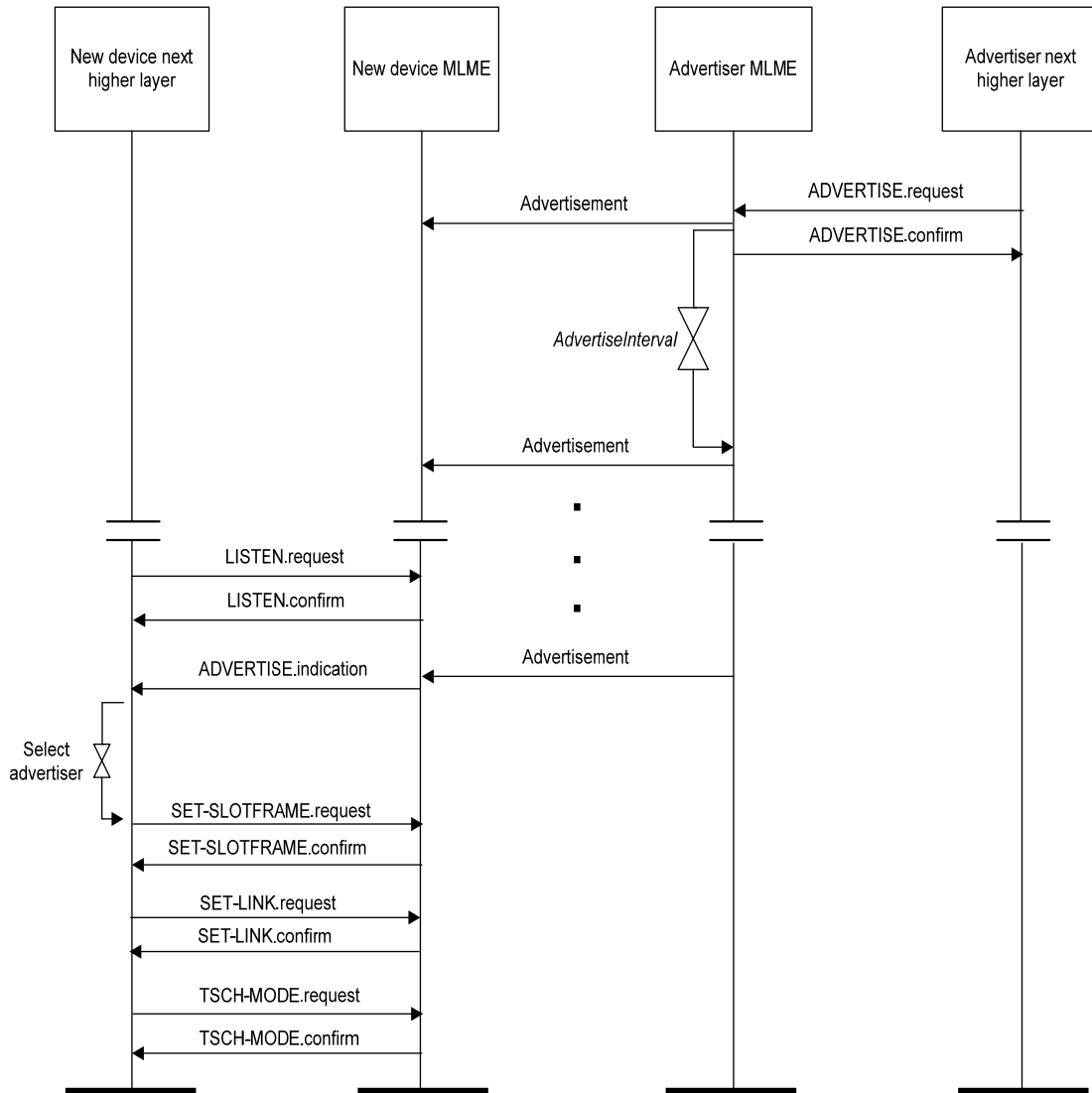
As a part of advertising, network devices that are already part of the network may send command frames announcing the presence of the network. Advertisement command frames include time synchronization



1 information and a unique PAN ID. A new device trying to join listens for the Advertisement command  
 2 frames. If the device is pre-provisioned with a PAN ID, then it matches the advertised PAN ID with the  
 3 provisioned one at the higher layer. If there is no provisioned PAN ID, the device does not look for a match.  
 4 When at least one acceptable Advertisement command frame is received, the new device can attempt to join  
 5 the network. A new device joins the network by sending a Join request command frame to an advertising  
 6 node. In a centralized management system this join command is routed to the PAN coordinator. In a  
 7 distributed management system it can be processed locally. When the device is accepted into the network,  
 8 the advertiser activates the device by setting up slotframes and links between the new device and other  
 9 existing devices. These slotframes and links can also be deleted and modified and new slotframes and links  
 10 added any time after a device has joined the network. The sequence of messages exchanged to synchronize a  
 11 device to the networks is shown in Figure 107.g. The join sequence is shown in Figure 107.h.

12 A new network starts when the PAN coordinator starts to advertise (typically at the request of Network  
 13 Manager residing in the PAN coordinator). Being the first node in the network, the PAN coordinator starts at  
 14 least one slotframe, to which other network devices may later synchronize.

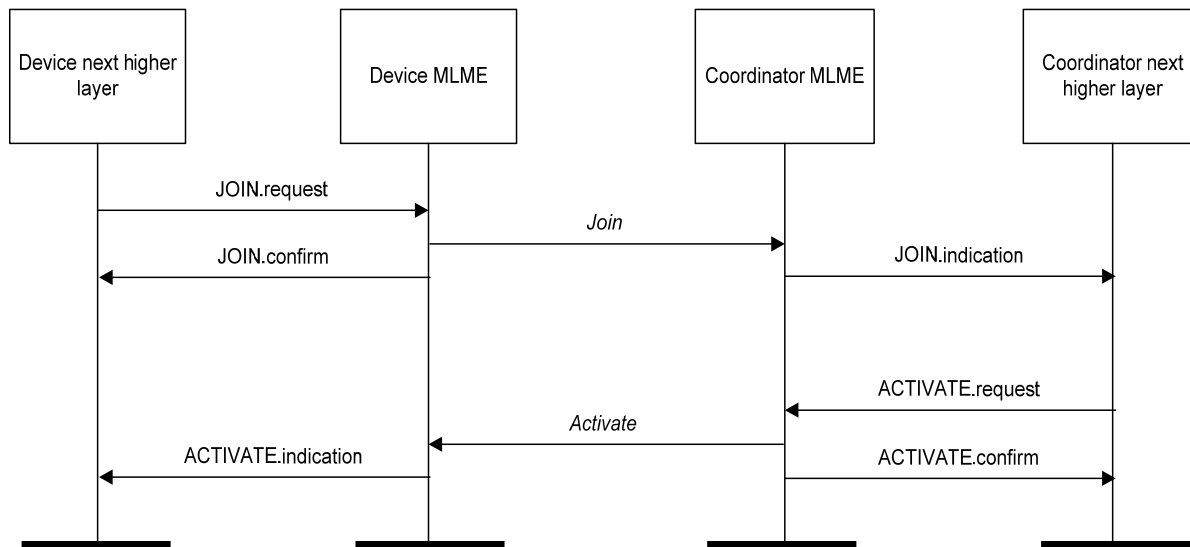
15



16  
17

18 **Figure 107.g—Message sequence chart for PA- procedure to find an advertising device**

19



1  
2  
3 **Figure 107.h—Message sequence chart for join and activate procedures**

#### 4 **7.5.2.6.2 Advertising**

5 In order for new devices to join a network they must first learn network information from some devices that  
6 are already part of the network. This is done through advertising. Network devices may send Advertisement  
7 command frames to invite new devices into the network. This is shown in Figure 107.g. The advertising  
8 device begins advertising on receipt of a ADVERTISE.request command from its NHL (next higher layer).  
9 At some time the device wishing to join the network begins listening (as result of receiving a  
10 LISTEN.request from its NHL). Once the listening device has heard an advertisement, it will generate an  
11 ADVERTISE.indication to a higher layer. The higher layer may initialize the slotframe and links contained  
12 in the advertisement and switch the device into PA-mode with a PA-MODE.request or wait for additional  
13 ADVERTISE.indications before doing so. At this point the device is synchronized to the network and may  
14 send in a Join request.

15 Advertisement command frames contain the following information:

- 16 — PAN ID.
- 17 — Time information so new devices can synchronize to the network.
- 18 — Channel page and a list of RF channels in that channel page being used.
- 19 — Link and slotframe information so new devices know when they can transmit to the advertising  
20 device.
- 21 — Link and slotframe information so new devices know when to listen for transmits from the  
22 advertising network device.

#### 24 **7.5.2.6.3 Joining**

25 After a new device hears at least one valid Advertisement command frame, it may synchronize to the  
26 network and start joining. Advertisement command frames contain information about the links through  
27 which the new device may communicate with the advertising neighbor, and through it forward frames to the  
28 Network Manager. The joining procedure may include a security handshake to mutually authenticate the  
29 joining device and the Network Manager and establish the secure session between the new device and the  
30 Network Manager in addition to allocating the communication resource to the joining device. The content of  
31 authentication messages is beyond the scope of this document.

1 The joining process is shown in Figure 107.h. The joining device sends in a join message which contains its  
2 identity, capability and security information, and a list of potential neighbors heard during listening. The  
3 advertising device that receives this join request may process it locally or send it to a Network manager. If  
4 the device is to be allowed into the network, then an activate command is sent containing some slotframes  
5 and links that the device may use to communicate to its neighbors, which may or may not be the neighbor to  
6 whom the join request was sent. After receiving the activate command, the device may be instructed to  
7 remove slotframes and links obtained from advertisements. The device may receive additional slotframes  
8 and links from a Network Manager or peer as required by the application.

### 9 **7.5.3 Association and disassociation**

### 10 **7.5.4 Synchronization**

11 *Insert before 7.5.4.1 the following paragraph.*

12 For PA, Subclause 7.5.4 specifies in addition the procedures for coordinators to generate beacon frames for  
13 devices to synchronize to the PA-network. For PANs not supporting beacons, synchronization is performed  
14 by time synchronized communication within a timeslot of the slotframe.

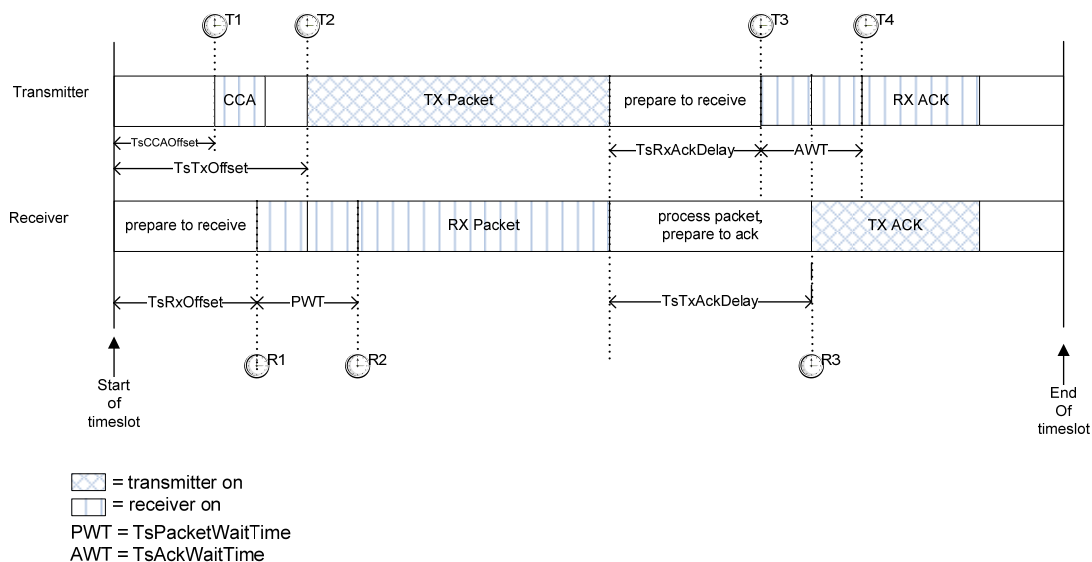
#### 15 **7.5.4.1 Synchronization with beacons**

16 *Insert before 7.5.5 the following subclauses.*

#### 17 **7.5.4.4 Synchronization in PA-network**

##### 18 **7.5.4.4.1 Timeslot communication**

19 During a timeslot in a slotframe, one node typically sends a frame, and another sends back an  
20 acknowledgement if it successfully receives that frame. An acknowledgement can be positive (ACK) or  
21 negative (NACK). A positive acknowledge indicates that the receiver has successfully received the frame  
22 and has taken ownership of it for further routing. A negative acknowledgement indicates that the receiver  
23 cannot accept the frame at this time, but has heard it with no errors. Both ACKs and NACKs carry timing  
24 information used by nodes to maintain network synchronization. Frames sent to a unicast node address  
25 require that a link-layer acknowledgement be sent in response during the same timeslot as shown in Figure  
26 107.i. If an acknowledgement is requested and not received within the timeout period, retransmission of the  
27 frame waits until the next assigned transmit timeslot (in any active slotframe) to that address occurs.



**Figure 107.i—Timeslot diagram of acknowledged transmission**

As shown in Figure 107.i, the timeslot starts at time  $T=0$  from the transmitting device's perspective. The transmitter waits  $TsCCAOffset$   $\mu s$ , and then performs CCA (if active). At  $TsTxOffset$   $\mu s$ , the device begins transmitting the packet. The transmitter then waits  $TsRxAckDelay$   $\mu s$ , then goes into receive mode to await the acknowledgement. If the acknowledgement doesn't arrive within  $TsAckWait$  (AWT)  $\mu s$  the device may idle the radio and that no acknowledgement will arrive.

On the receiver's side, at its estimate of  $T=0$  it waits  $TsRxOffset$   $\mu s$  and then goes into receive for  $TsRxWait$  (PWT)  $\mu s$ . If the frame has not started by that time, it may idle the receiver. Otherwise, once the frame has been received, the receiver waits  $TsTxAckDelay$   $\mu s$  and then sends an acknowledgement.

The transmitter or receiver may resynchronize clocks as described in 7.5.4.4.2.

EXAMPLE:

Below is the calculation of a 10 ms length timeslot template (from the transmitter's perspective):

$TsTxOffset$	2 120 $\mu s$
$TsMaxPacket$	4 256 $\mu s$
$TsRxAckDelay$	800 $\mu s$
$TsAckWait$	400 $\mu s$
<b><math>TsMaxAck</math></b>	<b>2 400 <math>\mu s</math></b>
Total	9 976 $\mu s$

This allows for a maximum 133 octet frame (total including all SHR, PHR, MHR, etc.) to be sent, and an acknowledgement of up to 75 octets to be returned within 10 ms.

### 7.5.4.4.2 Node synchronization

#### 7.5.4.4.2.1 General

Device-to-device synchronization is necessary to maintain connection with neighbors in a slotframe-based network. There are two methods for a device to synchronize to the network.

#### 1 7.5.4.4.2.2 Acknowledgement-based synchronization

2 Unicast communication provides a basic method of time synchronization through the exchange of data and  
 3 acknowledgement frames. The algorithm involves the receiver calculating the delta between the expected  
 4 time of frame arrival and its actual arrival, and providing that information to the sender node.

5 The algorithm can be described as follows:

- 6 — Transmitter node sends a frame, timing the start symbol to be sent at  $TsTxOffset$ .
- 7 — Receiver records the timestamp  $TsRxActual$  of receiving the start symbol of the packet.
- 8 — Receiver calculates  $TimeAdj = TsTxOffset - TsRxActual$ .
- 9 — Receiver send back  $TimeAdj$  as part of acknowledgement packet.
- 10 — Transmitter receives the acknowledgement. If the receiver node is a clock source node, the  
 11 transmitter adjusts its network clock by  $TimeAdj$ .

#### 13 7.5.4.4.2.3 Frame-based synchronization

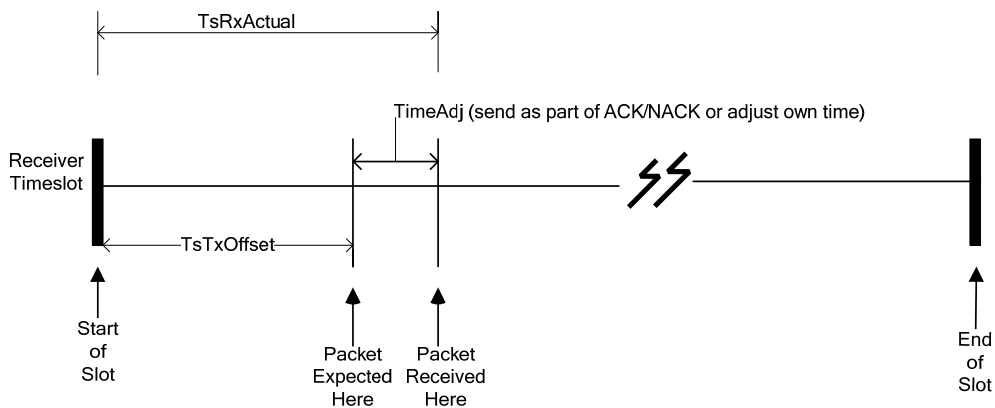
14 A node may synchronize its own network clock if it receives a frame from a clock source neighbor. The  
 15 mechanism is similar to that of ACK-based synchronization. The receiver calculates the delta between  
 16 expected time of frame arrival and its actual arrival time, and adjusts its own clock by the difference.

17 The algorithm can be described as follows:

- 18 — Receiver records the timestamp  $TsRxActual$  of receiving the start symbol of the packet.
- 19 — Receiver calculates  $TimeAdj = TsTxOffset - TsRxActual$ .
- 20 — Receiver adjusts its own network time by  $-TimeAdj$ .

21 Note that this procedure should only be executed if the node from which the frame is received is a clock  
 22 source for the receiver.

23 Figure 107.j illustrates both time synchronization mechanisms. In both cases, the receiver calculates  
 24  $TimeAdj$  to either send back to the transmitter or to use locally.



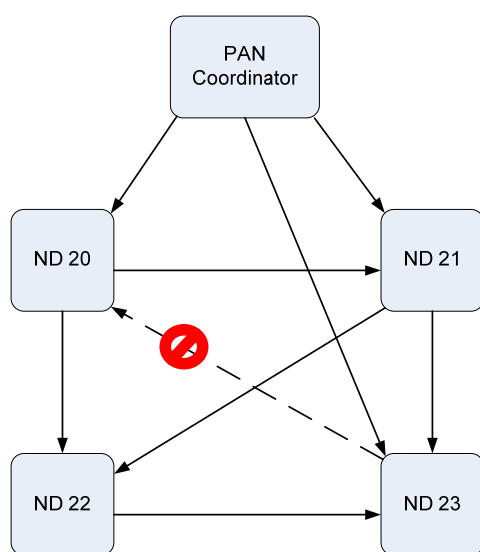
26  
 27  
 28 **Figure 107.j—Time synchronization**  
 29

#### 1 7.5.4.4.2.4 Network time synchronization

2 Precise time synchronization is critical to the operation of networks based on time division multiplexing.  
 3 Since all communication happens in timeslots, the network devices must have the same notion of when each  
 4 timeslot begins and ends, with minimal variation. The acknowledgement and frame-based synchronization  
 5 are used for pair-wise synchronization, as outlined below. In a typical PA-network, time propagates  
 6 outwards from the PAN coordinator. It is very important to maintain unidirectional time propagation and  
 7 avoid timing loops. A network device must periodically synchronize its network clock to at least one other  
 8 network device. It may also provide its network time to one or more network devices. A network device  
 9 determines whether to follow a neighbor's clock based on the presence of a ClockSource flag in the  
 10 corresponding neighbor's record (configured by the Network Manager). The direction of time propagation is  
 11 independent of data flow in the network.

12 A network device may have more than one neighbor as its clock source. In such cases, the device may  
 13 synchronize its clock to any of the neighbors that are acting as its clock source.

14 Figure 107.k shows typical time propagation in PA-network. The arrows indicate the direction of clock  
 15 distribution. In this example, the PAN coordinator acts as the clock source for the entire network. Network  
 16 Device (ND) 20 synchronizes to the PAN coordinator only, while ND 22 synchronizes its clock to both ND  
 17 20 and ND 21. If ND 20 and ND 23 were to be connected, ND 20 must provide time to ND 23. Setting it up  
 18 otherwise would create a timing loop.



19  
20

**Figure 107.k—Time propagation in PA-network**

#### 21 7.5.4.4.2.5 Keep-Alive mechanism

22 In order to ensure that it remains synchronized with the PA-network (and to detect when paths may be down)  
 23 a network device shall ensure that it communicates with each of its clock sources at least once per Keep  
 24 Alive period.

25 If a network device has not sent a packet to its clock parent within this interval, it shall send a Keep-Alive  
 26 command frame and use the ACK to perform ACK-based synchronization as usual.

#### 27 7.5.5 Transaction handling

#### 28 7.5.6.2 Reception and rejection

29 *Change text in 7.5.6.2.*

- 1 Each device may choose whether the MAC sublayer is to enable its receiver during idle periods. During  
 2 these idle periods, the MAC sublayer shall still service transceiver task requests from the next higher layer.  
 3 A transceiver task shall be defined as a transmission request with acknowledgment reception, if required, or  
 4 a reception request. On completion of each transceiver task, the MAC sublayer shall request that the PHY  
 5 enables or disables its receiver, depending on the values of *macBeaconOrder* and *macRxOnWhenIdle*. If  
 6 *macBeaconOrder* is less than 15, the value of *macRxOnWhenIdle* shall be considered relevant only during  
 7 idle periods of the CAP of the incoming superframe. If *macBeaconOrder* is equal to 15 or  
 8 macFAlowLatencyPAN is FALSE, the value of *macRxOnWhenIdle* shall be considered relevant at all times.  
 9 If macFAlowLatencyPAN is TRUE, the value of macRxOnWhenIdle is not considered relevant.
- 10 Due to the nature of radio communications, a device with its receiver enabled will be able to receive and  
 11 decode transmissions from all devices complying with this standard that are currently operating on the same  
 12 channel and are in its POS, along with interference from other sources. The MAC sublayer shall, therefore,  
 13 be able to filter incoming frames and present only the frames that are of interest to the upper layers.
- 14 For the first level of filtering, the MAC sublayer shall discard all received frames that do not contain a  
 15 correct value in their FCS field in the MFR (see 7.2.1.9 and 7.2.5.1.4). The FCS field shall be verified on  
 16 reception by recalculating the purported FCS over the MHR and MAC payload of the received frame and by  
 17 subsequently comparing this value with the received FCS field. The FCS field of the received frame shall be  
 18 considered to be correct if these values are the same and incorrect otherwise.
- 19 The second level of filtering shall be dependent on whether the MAC sublayer is currently operating in  
 20 promiscuous mode. In promiscuous mode, the MAC sublayer shall pass all frames received after the first  
 21 filter directly to the upper layers without applying any more filtering or processing. The MAC sublayer shall  
 22 be in promiscuous mode if *macPromiscuousMode* is set to TRUE.
- 23 If the MAC sublayer is not in promiscuous mode (i.e., *macPromiscuousMode* is set to FALSE), it shall  
 24 accept only frames that satisfy all of the following third-level filtering requirements:
- 25 — The Frame Type subfield shall not contain a reserved frame type.
  - 26 — The Frame Version subfield shall not contain a reserved value.
  - 27 — If a destination PAN identifier is included in the frame, it shall match *macPANId* or shall be the broadcast  
 28 PAN identifier (0xffff).
  - 29 — If a short destination address is included in the frame, it shall match either *macShortAddress*,  
 30 *macVeryShortAddress*, or the broadcast address (0xffff). Otherwise, if an extended destination address is  
 31 included in the frame, it shall match *aExtendedAddress*.
  - 32 — If the frame type indicates that the frame is a beacon frame (frame type b000), the source PAN identifier  
 33 shall match *macPANId* unless *macPANId* is equal to 0xffff, in which case the beacon frame shall be accepted  
 34 regardless of the source PAN identifier. If the frame type indicates that the frame is a beacon frame of an  
 35 LLNW (frame type b100, subframe type b00) and indicates online mode, the Gateway ID field shall match  
 36 macFAlowLatencyNWid.
  - 37 — If only source addressing fields are included in a data or MAC command frame, the frame shall be  
 38 accepted only if the device is the PAN coordinator and the source PAN identifier matches *macPANId*.
- 39 If any of the third-level filtering requirements are not satisfied, the MAC sublayer shall discard the incoming  
 40 frame without processing it further. If all of the third-level filtering requirements are satisfied, the frame  
 41 shall be considered valid and processed further. For valid frames that are not broadcast, if the Frame Type  
 42 subfield indicates a data or MAC command frame and the Acknowledgment Request subfield of the Frame  
 43 Control field is set to one, the MAC sublayer shall send an acknowledgment frame. Prior to the transmission  
 44 of the acknowledgment frame, the sequence number included in the received data or MAC command frame  
 45 shall be copied into the Sequence Number field of the acknowledgment frame. This step will allow the  
 46 transaction originator to know that it has received the appropriate acknowledgment frame.
- 47 If the PAN ID Compression subfield of the Frame Control field is set to one and both destination and source  
 48 addressing information is included in the frame, the MAC sublayer shall assume that the omitted Source  
 49 PAN Identifier field is identical to the Destination PAN Identifier field.
- 50 The device shall process the frame using the incoming frame security procedure described in 7.5.9.2.3.

1 If the status from the incoming frame security procedure is not SUCCESS, the MLME shall issue the  
 2 corresponding confirm or MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with the status parameter set to the  
 3 status from the incoming frame security procedure, indicating the error, and with the security-related  
 4 parameters set to the corresponding parameters returned by the unsecuring process.

5 If the valid frame is a data frame, the MAC sublayer shall pass the frame to the next higher layer. This is  
 6 achieved by issuing the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive containing the frame information. The security  
 7 related parameters of the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive shall be set to the corresponding parameters  
 8 returned by the unsecuring process.

9 If the valid frame is a MAC command or beacon frame, it shall be processed by the MAC sublayer  
 10 accordingly, and a corresponding confirm or indication primitive may be sent to the next higher layer. The  
 11 security-related parameters of the corresponding confirm or indication primitive shall be set to the  
 12 corresponding parameters returned by the unsecuring process.

#### 13 **7.5.6.4.2 Acknowledgment**

14 *Insert before 7.5.6.4.3 the following paragraph.*

15 When operating in PA-mode (see 7.1.21.3), the acknowledgement frame is sent at the time specified by the  
 16 macTimeslotTemplate being used (see 7.4.2 and 7.5.4.4.1).

#### 17 **7.5.6.4.3 Retransmissions**

18 *Insert after the heading of 7.5.6.4.3 the following subclause.*

##### 19 **7.5.6.4.3.1 General**

20 *Insert before 7.5.6.5 the following subclause.*

##### 21 **7.5.6.4.3.2 PA-Retransmissions**

22 A device that sends a data or MAC command frame with its Acknowledgment Request subfield set to one  
 23 shall wait for  $TsRxAckDelay$   $\mu$ s. If an acknowledgment frame is received within macAckWaitDuration  
 24 symbols and contains the same DSN as the original transmission, the transmission is considered successful,  
 25 and no further action regarding retransmission shall be taken by the device. If an acknowledgment is not  
 26 received within the appropriate timeout or an acknowledgment is received containing a DSN that was not the  
 27 same as the original transmission, the device shall conclude that the single transmission attempt has failed.

28 If a single transmission attempt has failed and the transmission was indirect, the coordinator shall not  
 29 retransmit the data or MAC command frame. Instead, the frame shall remain in the transaction queue of the  
 30 coordinator and can only be extracted following the reception of a new data request command. If a new data  
 31 request command is received, the originating device shall transmit the frame using the same DSN as was  
 32 used in the original transmission.

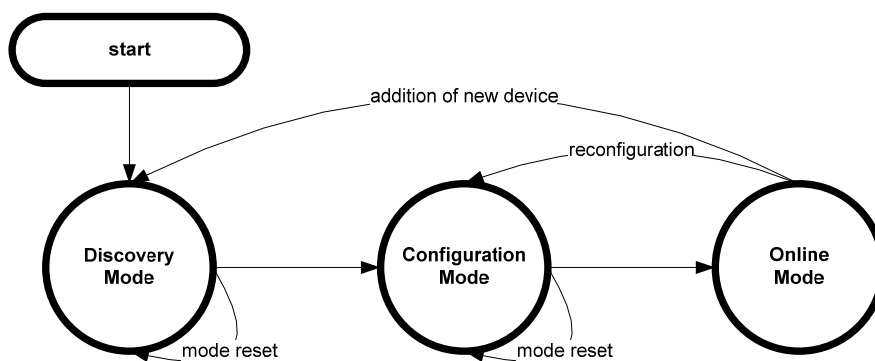
33 If a single transmission attempt has failed and the transmission was direct, the device shall repeat the process  
 34 of transmitting the data or MAC command frame and waiting for the acknowledgment, up to a maximum of  
 35 macMaxFrameRetries times. The retransmitted frame shall contain the same DSN as was used in the original  
 36 transmission. Each retransmission shall only be attempted if it can be completed within the same portion of  
 37 the superframe, i.e., the CAP or a GTS in which the original transmission was attempted. If this timing is not  
 38 possible, the retransmission shall be deferred until the same portion in the next superframe. In PA-mode  
 39 (see 7.1.21.3), retransmissions only occur on subsequent transmit links to the same recipient on any active  
 40 slotframe. If an acknowledgment is still not received after macMaxFrameRetries retransmissions, the MAC  
 41 sublayer shall assume the transmission has failed and notify the next higher layer of the failure.



1 **7.5.6.5 Promiscuous mode**2 **7.5.7 GTS allocation and management**3 **7.5.7.6 GTS expiration**4 **7.5.8 Ranging**5 *Insert before 7.5.8 the following subclauses.*6 **7.5.9 LL-Transmission Modes in star networks using short MAC headers**7 **7.5.9.1 General**

8 The transitions between the different transmission modes are illustrated in Figure 111.a.

9



10

11

12

13 **Figure 111.a—Transitions between transmission modes**

14

15 The discovery mode is the first step during network setup: the new devices are discovered and configured in  
 16 the second step, the configuration mode. After the successful completion of the configuration mode, the  
 17 network can go into online mode. Productivity data, that is, data and readings from the devices such as  
 18 sensors and actuators, can only be transmitted during online modus. In order to reconfigure a network, the  
 configuration mode can be started again.

19 **7.5.9.2 Discovery Mode**

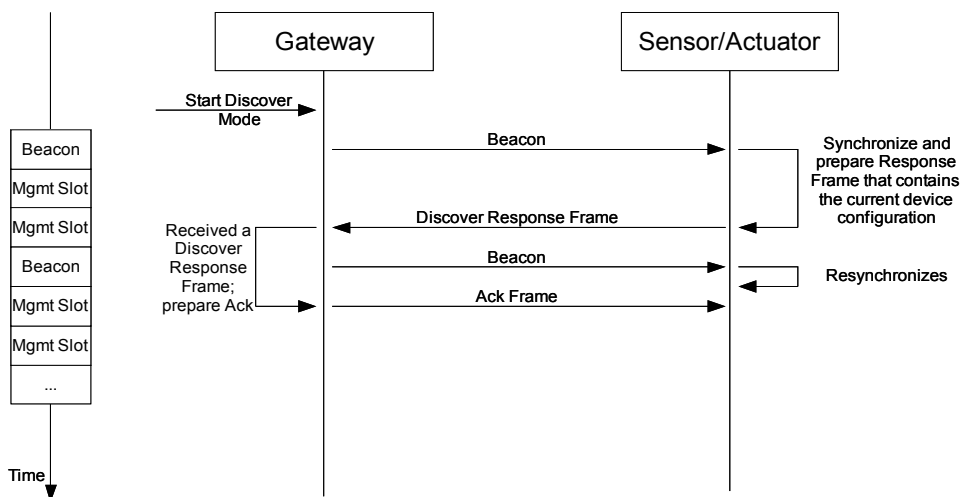
20 The Discovery Mode is the first step during network setup or for the addition of new devices to an existing  
 21 network.

22 In discovery mode, the superframe contains only the time slot for the beacon (see 7.5.1.6.2) and two  
 23 management time slots, one downlink and one uplink (7.5.1.6.3).

24 A new device scans the different channels until it detects a gateway sending beacons that indicate discovery  
 25 mode.

26 If a new device received a beacon indicating discovery mode, it tries to get access to the transmission  
 27 medium in the uplink management time slot in order to send a Discover Response frame to the gateway. The  
 28 Discover Response frame is described in 7.3.11.1. The Discover Response frame contains the current  
 29 configuration of the device. The new device shall repeat sending the Discover Response frame until it  
 30 receives an Acknowledgement frame for it or the Discovery Mode is stopped by the gateway. The  
 31 Acknowledgement frame is described in 7.2.5.2.4.

1 Figure 111.b illustrates the discovery mode.



2  
3 **Figure 111.b—Flow diagram of Discovery Mode**  
4

5 **7.5.9.3 Configuration Mode**

6 The Configuration Mode is the second step during network setup. It is also used for network reconfiguration.

7 In configuration mode, the superframe contains only the time slot for the beacon (see 7.5.1.6.2) and two  
8 management time slots, one downlink and one uplink (see 7.5.1.6.3).

9 If a device received a beacon indicating configuration mode, it tries to get access to the transmission medium  
10 in the uplink management time slot in order to send a Configuration Response frame to the gateway. The  
11 Configuration Response frame is described in 7.3.11.2. The Configuration Response frame contains the  
12 current configuration of the device. The new device shall repeat sending the Configuration Response frame  
13 until it receives a Configuration Request frame for it or the Configuration Mode is stopped by the gateway.  
14 The Configuration Request frame is described in 7.3.11.3. The Configuration Request frame contains the  
15 new configuration for the receiving device. After successfully receiving the Configuration Request frame,  
16 the device sends an Acknowledgement frame to the gateway. The Acknowledgement frame is described in  
17 7.2.5.2.4.

18 Figure 111.c illustrates the configuration mode.

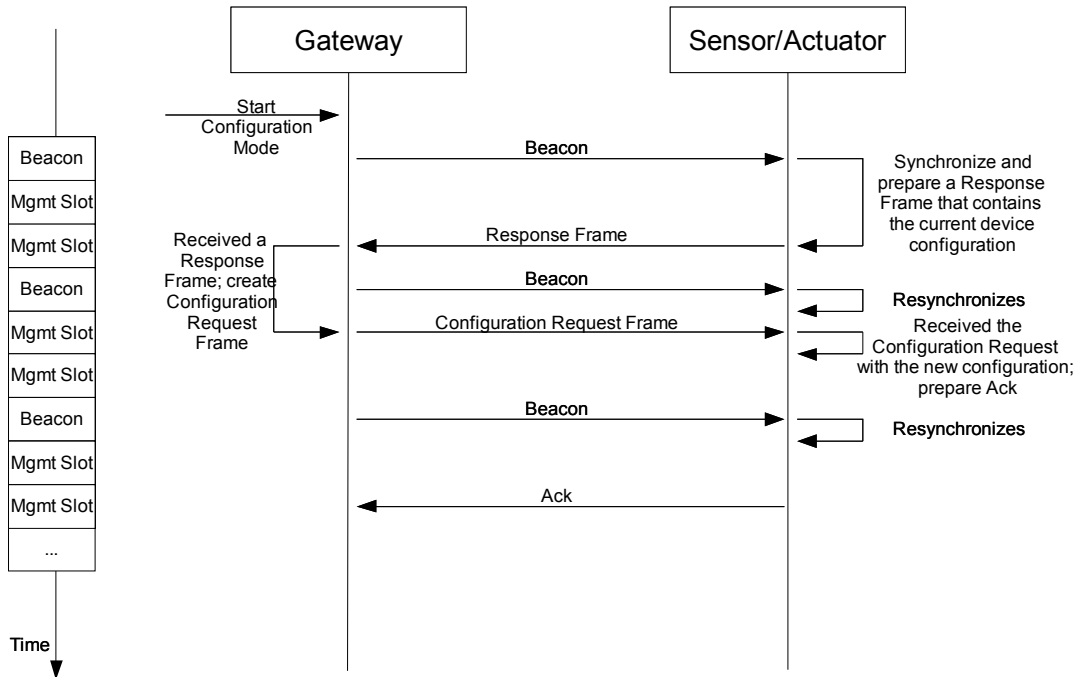


Figure 111.c—Flow diagram of configuration mode

7.5.9.4 Online Mode

User data is only sent during Online mode. The superframe starts with a beacon and is followed by several time slots. The devices can send their data during the time slots assigned to them during configuration mode. The different types of time slots are described in clause 5.

The existence and length of management time slots in online mode is signalled in the configuration request frame.

The successful reception of data frames by the gateway is acknowledged in the Group Acknowledgement bitmap of the beacon frame of the next superframe (see 7.2.5.2.2.3) or in a separate Data Group Acknowledgement frame (see 7.2.5.2.2.4) if so configured. This is the case for both sensor time slots and actuator time slots if the actuator direction is uplink. Figure 111.d illustrates an example of the online mode for uplink transmissions. The network has 3 dedicated time slots, and sensor 2 is assigned to time slot 2.

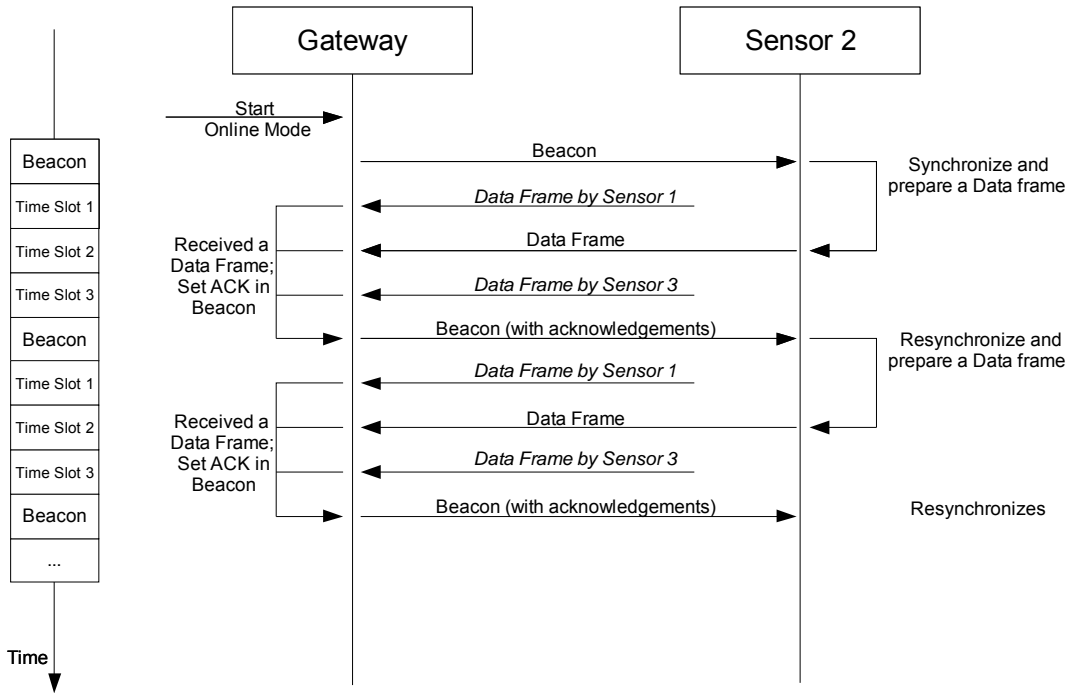


Figure 111.d—Flow diagram of online mode for sensor devices

If retransmission time slots are configured ( $macFAnumRetransmitTS > 0$ ), the retransmission slots are assigned to the owners of the first  $macFAnumRetransmitTS$  with the corresponding bit in the group acknowledgement bitmap set to 0. Each sensor node has to execute the following algorithm in order to determine its retransmission time slot  $r$ . The gateway has to execute a similar algorithm in order to determine the senders of the frames in the retransmission slots.

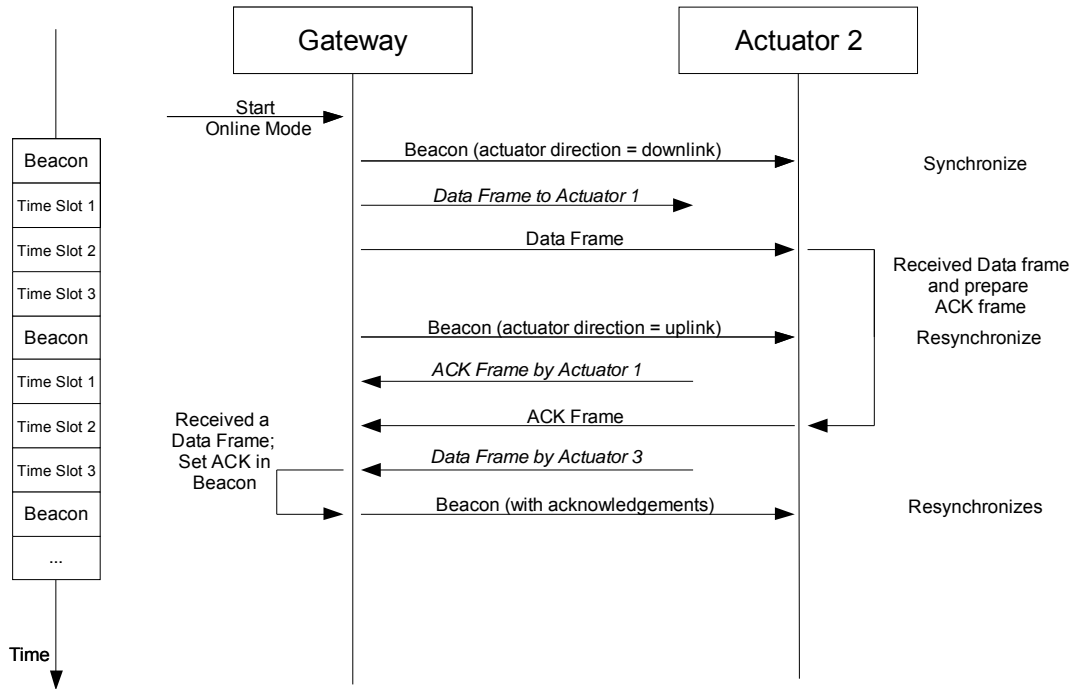
Assume that the sensor node has been assigned to sensor time slot  $s$ .  $ack[i]$  means the bit  $b_{i-1}$  in the group acknowledgement bitmap according to Figure 92.j in 7.2.5.2.2.3.

```

10 if (ack[s] == false) {
11     num_failed := number of (ack[i] == 0 with
12     (macFAnumRetransmitTS+1) ≤ i ≤ (s-1))
13     if (num_failed < macFAnumRetransmitTS) {
14         retransmission_possible = true
15         r = num_failed + 1
16     }
17     else {
18         retransmission_possible = false
19     }
20 }

```

The successful reception of data frames by actuator devices (actuator direction is downlink) is acknowledged by an explicit acknowledgement frame by the corresponding actuator devices in the following superframe. This means that after setting the actuator direction bit in the beacon (see 7.2.5.2.2.3) to downlink and sending a data frame to one or more actuator devices, the gateway shall set the actuator direction bit to uplink in the directly following superframe. Actuator devices having successfully received a data frame from the gateway during the previous superframe shall send an acknowledgement frame to the gateway. Actuator devices that did not receive a data frame from the gateway, may send data frames to the gateway during this superframe with actuator direction bit set to uplink. Figure 111.e illustrates the online mode with actuator devices. The network has 3 dedicated actuator time slots, and actuator 2 is assigned to time slot 2.



1  
2 **Figure 111.e—Flow diagram of online mode for actuator devices**

3 **7.5.10 CM-EGTS-based Multi-superframe Structure**

4 **7.5.10.1 EGTS-based Multi-superframe Structure Definition**

5 A coordinator on an EGTS-based PAN can optionally bound its channel time using a multi-superframe  
6 structure. A multi-superframe is a cycle of repeated superframes, each of which consists of a beacon frame, a  
7 CAP and a CFP.

8 The structure of this multi-superframe is described by the values of *macBeaconOrder*,  
9 *macSuperframeOrder*, and *macMulti-superframeOrder*.

10 The MAC PIB attribute *macBeaconOrder* describes the interval at which the coordinator shall transmit its  
11 beacon frames. The value of *macBeaconOrder*, *BO*, and the beacon interval, *BI*, are related as follows: for  $0 \leq BO \leq 14$ ,  $BI = aBaseSuperframeDuration * 2^{BO}$  symbols. If  $BO = 15$ , the coordinator shall not transmit  
12 beacon frames except when requested to do so, such as on receipt of a beacon request command. The value  
13 of *macSuperframeOrder* and *macMulti-superframeOrder* shall be ignored if  $BO = 15$ .

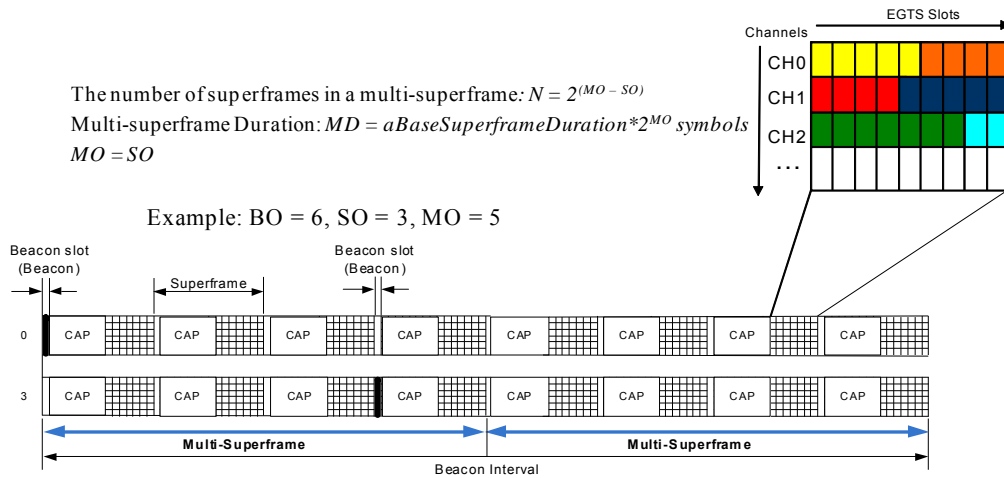
15 The MAC PIB attribute *macSuperframeOrder* describes the length of a superframe. The value of  
16 *macSuperframeOrder*, *SO*, and the superframe duration, *SD*, are related as follows: for  $0 \leq SO \leq BO \leq 14$ ,  
17  $SD = aBaseSuperframeDuration * 2^{SO}$  symbols.

18 The MAC PIB attribute *macMulti-superframeOrder* describes the length of a multi-superframe, which is a  
19 cycle of repeated superframes. The value of *macMulti-superframeOrder*, *MO*, and the multi-superframe  
20 duration, *MD*, are related as follows: for  $0 \leq SO \leq MO \leq BO \leq 14$ ,  $MD = aBaseSuperframeDuration * 2^{MO}$   
21 symbols.

22 In case, both active period and inactive period in the beacon interval are filled with cyclic multi-superframes.

23 Each superframe shall be divided into *aNumSuperframeSlots* equally spaced slots of duration  $2^{SO} * aBaseSlotDuration$   
24 and is composed of three parts: a beacon, a CAP and a CFP. The beacon shall be transmitted, without the use of CSMA, at the start of slot 0, and the CAP shall commence immediately  
25 following the beacon. The start of slot 0 is defined as the point at which the first symbol of the beacon PPDU  
26 is transmitted. The CFP follows immediately after the CAP and extends to the end of the superframe. Any  
27 allocated EGTSs shall be located within the CFP.  
28

- 1 The EGTS-based PANs shall use the multi-superframe structure, and set *macBeaconOrder* to a value
- 2 between 0 and 14, both inclusive, and *macSuperframeOrder* to a value between 0 and the value of
- 3 *macBeaconOrder*, *macMulti-superframeOrder* to a value between the value of *macSuperframeOrder* and the
- 4 value of *macBeaconOrder*, both inclusive.
- 5 An example of a multi-superframe structure is shown in Figure 111.f. In this case, the beacon interval, *BI*, is
- 6 eight times as long as the superframe duration, *SD*, and twice as long as the multi-superframe duration, *MD*.

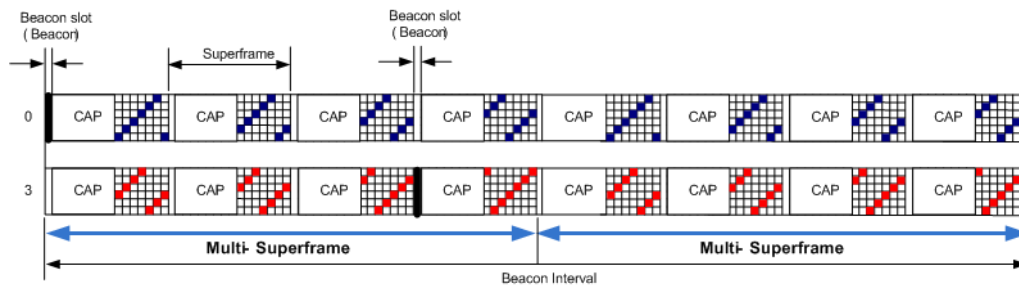


7  
8 **Figure 111.f—EGTS-based multi-superframe structure**

9 **7.5.10.2 Channel Hopping Mode**

- 10 In channel hopping mode (i.e., ChannelDiversityMode is set to '1'), each EGTS slot shall use different
- 11 channel to receive. Series of channels used at each EGTS slots is called channel hopping sequence. Same
- 12 channel hopping sequence shall be repeated over whole EGTS slots in a multi-superframe. Device may
- 13 select channel offset value to prevent same channel is used among devices within interfering range so as to
- 14 minimize adverse interfering signals. Thus, devices in the PAN with single channel hopping sequence can
- 15 access different channels at the given EGTS slot if they have different channel hopping offset values, due to
- 16 orthogonality in time and frequency.

- 17 An Example of the schedule of channels and EGTSs in Channel Hopping mode is illustrated in Figure 111.g.



18  
19 **Figure 111.g—Channel usage of EGTS slots in EGTS-based multi-superframe structure**

- 20 In this example, channel hopping sequence is {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6} and the channel hopping offset values of two
- 21 devices are 0 and 2 respectively. For the device with channel hopping offset value of 0, EGTS slots
- 22 (timeslot, channel) for this device are (1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5), (6, 6), (7, 1), (8, 2), (9, 3), and so on.
- 23 Similarly, for the device with channel hopping offset value of 2, EGTS slots are given as (1, 3), (2, 4), (3, 5),
- 24 (4, 6), (5, 1), (6, 2), and so on.

- 25 Thus, channel number *C* at the given EGTS slots index *i* shall be determined as:

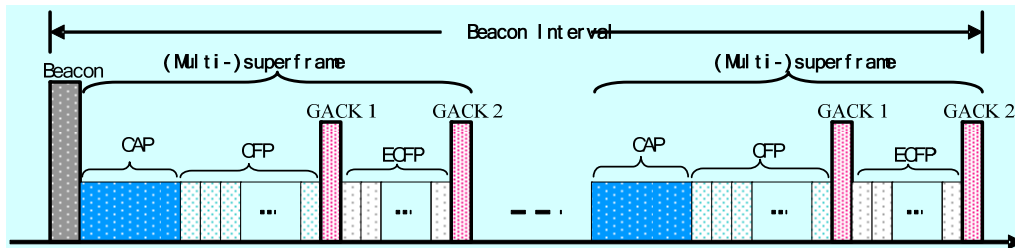
1 
$$C(i) = CHSeq[ (i + CHOffset) \% CHSeqLength ],$$
  
 2 where  $CHSeq[j]$  represents the  $(j)$ th channel number in channel hopping sequence in use,  $CHOffset$  is the  
 3 channel offset value and  $CHSeqLength$  is the length of channel hopping sequence.

4 Meanwhile, total number of EGTS slots  $NoSlot$  in a multi-superframe is given by:

$$5 \quad NoSlot = (7 * 2^{(MO-SO)}) \text{ slots}$$

### 6 7.5.10.3 Group Ack

7 In many application systems, it may be imperative to provide the sensor nodes with a retransmission  
 8 opportunity, within the same superframe, for a data frame that failed in its GTS transmission. To satisfy that  
 9 crucial requirement, the CFP of the MAC superframe shall be organized into several sub-periods as show in  
 10 Figure 111.h. Specifically, these sub-periods are standard CFP (or SCFP) slots, a group acknowledgement  
 11 (GACK 1) slot, extended CFP (ECFP) slots, and another group acknowledgement (GACK 2) slot. Beacon  
 12 frame, transmitted by the coordinator at the beginning of the slot 0, shall specify the information about the  
 13 CFP. That information shall be used to determine the start of the SCFP and its duration. For the failed GTS  
 14 transmissions in SCFP, the coordinator shall dynamically allocate new time slots, in the ECFP, and inform  
 15 the sensor nodes of these new allocations by transmitting the GACK 1 frame at the end of the SCFP. In  
 16 addition to transmitting the information about dynamic resource assignment (i.e. allocation of time slots for  
 17 use in ECFP), the GACK 1 frame shall also include a group acknowledgement (in the form of a bitmap)  
 18 for the GTS frame successfully received by the coordinator during the SCFP. The use of group  
 19 acknowledgement bitmap eliminates the need for the coordinator to switch over from Rx mode to Tx mode  
 20 and then back to Rx mode while acknowledging individual GTS transmissions. Based on the resource  
 21 allocation, as specified in the GACK 1 frame, the sending nodes shall retransmit their data frames in the  
 22 allocated time slots in the ECFP. The coordinator shall transmit the GACK 2 frame after the completion  
 23 of the ECFP. The GACK 2 frame shall contain the bitmap only indicating successful and failed reception of  
 24 GTS frames during the ECFP. If the GACK 1 frame contains no resource assignments, the ECFP and GACK  
 25 2 shall be non-existent in that superframe.



26  
27  
28 **Figure 111.h—Details of EGTS Superframe with ECFP and GACK**

29 In addition to allow a retransmission of failed GTS transmissions in the SCFP, the ECFP shall also be used  
 30 for allocating additional time slots on-demand to requesting nodes. A node shall request an additional GTS  
 31 in the ECFP by setting a flag in the primitive while forwarding its data frame in the SCFP. The coordinator  
 32 shall decide, based on the availability of time slots and/or priority mechanism, if to allocate the requested  
 33 additional slots. The requesting node shall find the result of its request by checking the resource allocation in  
 34 the following GACK 1 frame.

35 The structure of the GACK frame, as shown in Figure 111.i shall contain the following fields.

36 **PAN ID:** This field shall identify the PAN of the transmitting coordinator.

37 **Source ID:** This field shall identify the transmitting coordinator in the PAN.

38 **Group Ack Flags:** It is a bitmap that indicates the state of transmission in each GTS in previous SCFP or  
 39 ECFP. A bit having '1' indicates the fact that the coordinator received the data frame successfully in the  
 40 corresponding GTS. A '0' means that the coordinator failed in receiving a data frame in the corresponding  
 41 slot.

42 **Channel Index:** This field specifies the channel sequence to be followed in the ECFP or a tailing CAP, if  
 43 allowed in a system, in a channel hopping system. This field shall be non-existent in the GACK 2 frame.

- 1 **EGTS Device List:** This list identifies the sensor nodes that are being allocated the time slots in ECFP
- 2 portion of the superframe. This field shall be non-existent in the GACK 2 frame.
- 3 **EGTS Index:** It is a list that specifies the start of each GTS for the allocated nodes in the same order as in
- 4 EGTS device list. This field is applicable only in those systems that allow a GTS to consist of multiple time
- 5 slots. This field shall be non-existent in the GACK 2 frame.
- 6 **EGTS Directions:** This list specifies the direction of transmission (uplink or downlink) for each GTS. This
- 7 is applicable only in the systems that allow the coordinator to transmit a frame to its sensor nodes by using a
- 8 GTS. This field shall be non-existent in the GACK 2 frame.

Octets: 2	1									
Frame Control	Sequence Number	PAN ID	Source ID	Group ACK Flags	Channel Index	EGTS Device List	EGTS Index	EGTS Directions	FCS	
MHR		MAC Payload							MFR	

Figure 111.i—GACK Frame Structure

7.5.10.4 CAP Reduction

If *macCAPReductionFlag* or the CAP Reduction Flag subfield in the EGTS Superframe Specification field of a beacon frame is set to TRUE, the CAP reduction shall be enabled, except the first superframe in the multi-superframe, other superframes do not have the CAP. Figure 111.j shows an example of the multi-superframe structure when CAP reduction is enabled.

Comment [youcy5]: The part of Group Ack should be reorganized in the description principle of IEEE, as separate into three parts: new primitive, new frame format and function description.

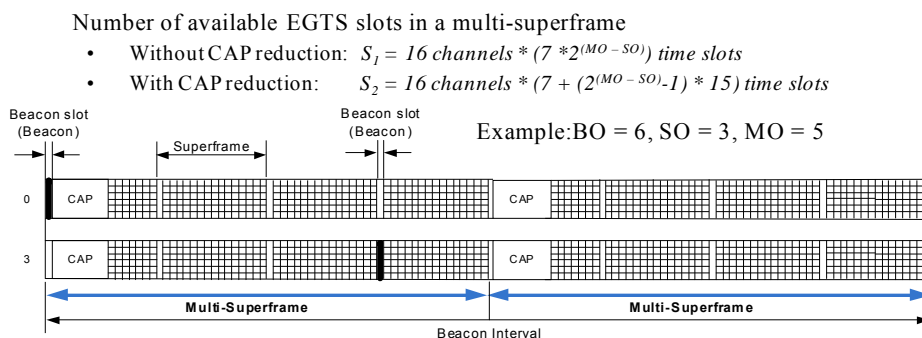


Figure 111.j— CAP Reduction in EGTS-based Multi-superframe Structure

7.5.10.5 EGTS allocation and management

An Enhanced Guaranteed Time Slot (EGTS) functionality allows a CM-device to operate on the channel within a portion of the superframe that is dedicated (on the PAN) exclusively to that device. An EGTS shall be allocated by the destination device, and it shall be used only for communications between the source device and the destination device. A single EGTS may extend over one or more superframe slots. The destination device may allocate up to seven EGTSs at the same time, provided there is sufficient capacity in the superframe.

An EGTS shall be allocated before use, with the destination device deciding whether to allocate an EGTS based on the requirements of the EGTS request and the current available capacity in the superframe. EGTSs shall be allocated on a first-come-first-served basis, and all EGTSs shall be placed contiguously at the end of the superframe and after the CAP (or after the beacon slot if CAP reduction is enabled). Each EGTS shall be deallocated when the EGTS is no longer required, and an EGTS can be deallocated at any time by the destination device or the source device that originally requested the EGTS. A device that has been allocated an EGTS may also operate in the CAP.



- 1 A data frame transmitted in an allocated EGTS shall use only short addressing.
- 2 The management of EGTSs shall be undertaken by both of the destination device and the source device. To  
3 facilitate EGTS management, the destination device and the source device shall be able to store all the  
4 information necessary to manage EGTSs. For each EGTS, the destination device and the source device shall  
5 be able to store its starting slot, length, and associated device address.
- 6 Each EGTS requested by the source device must be the transmit EGTS for the source device, and the receive  
7 EGTS for the destination device, so for each allocated EGTS, there is no need for a device to store the  
8 direction. If a destination device has been allocated an EGTS, it shall enable its receiver for the entirety of  
9 the EGTS. If a data frame is received during an EGTS and an acknowledgment is requested, the destination  
10 device shall transmit the acknowledgment frame as usual. Similarly, the source device shall be able to  
11 receive an acknowledgment frame during the EGTS it requested.
- 12 A source device shall attempt to request a new EGTS only if it is synchronizing with the destination device.  
13 The MLME of the source device is instructed to get the timestamp and the parameters of its EGTSs from the  
14 destination device by issuing the MLME-EGTSinfo.request primitive, and then the source device will send  
15 the EGTS information request command frame.
- 16 If a source device loses synchronization with the destination device, all its EGTSs allocations shall be lost.
- 17 The use of EGTSs is optional.
- 18 **7.5.10.6 EGTS allocation**
- 19 A CM-device is instructed to request the allocation of a new EGTS through the MLME-GTS.request  
20 primitive, with EGTS characteristics set according to the requirements of the intended application and  
21 EGTSFlag set to TRUE.
- 22 To request the allocation of a new EGTS, the MLME of the Source device shall send an EGTS handshake  
23 command (see 7.3.10) to the Destination device. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS  
24 Characteristics field shall be set to one (EGTS allocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to  
25 zero (EGTS request). The EGTS Length subfield of the EGTSDescriptor field shall be set according to the  
26 desired characteristics of the required EGTS. The EGTS ABT Specification subfield shall be set according to  
27 the current allocation status of all one-hop neighborhoods of the Source device.
- 28 After sending the EGTS handshake request command frame, the source device shall wait for at most  
29 *anEGTSRequestWaitingTime* symbols, if no EGTS handshake reply command frame appears within this  
30 time, the MLME of the source device shall notify the next higher layer of the failure. This notification is  
31 achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive (see 7.1.7.2) with a status of  
32 NO\_DATA.
- 33 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS allocation request, the Destination  
34 device shall first check if there is available capacity in the current multi-superframe, based on the ABT sub-  
35 block maintained by the Destination device, the desired length of the request EGTS and the ABT sub-block  
36 subfield in the EGTS handshake request command frame from the Source device. The Multi-superframe  
37 shall have available capacity if enough vacant slots exist in both ABT sub-block subfields of the Destination  
38 device and the Source device to satisfy the requested length. EGTSs shall be allocated on a first-come-first-  
39 served basis by the Destination device provided there is sufficient bandwidth available.
- 40 When the Destination device determines whether capacity is available for the requested EGTS, it shall  
41 generate an EGTS descriptor (see 7.3.10.2) with the requested specifications and the 16-bit short address of  
42 the requesting source device. If the EGTS was allocated successfully, the destination device shall set the  
43 EGTS Slot Identifier subfield in the EGTS descriptor to the multi-superframe slot at which the allocated  
44 EGTS begins from, the EGTS Length subfield in the EGTS descriptor to the length of the EGTS and the  
45 Device short address to the address of the source device. In addition, the destination device shall notify the  
46 next higher layer of the newly allocated EGTS. This notification is achieved when the MLME of the  
47 destination device issues the MLME-GTS.indication primitive (7.1.7.3) with the characteristics of the  
48 allocated EGTS and the EGTSFlag set to TRUE. If there was not sufficient capacity to allocate the requested  
49 EGTS, the EGTS Slot Identifier shall be set to zero and the length set to the largest EGTS length that can  
50 currently be supported.
- 51 The Destination device shall then include the EGTS descriptor in its EGTS handshake command frame and  
52 broadcast it to its one-hop neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field

- 1 shall be set to one (EGTS allocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to one (EGTS reply).The  
2 EGTS ABT Specification subfield shall be set to represent the newly allocated slots.
- 3 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS allocation reply, the device shall  
4 process the EGTS descriptor.
- 5 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor does not correspond to  
6 *macShortAddress* of the device, the device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's newly allocated EGTS.
- 7 If the newly allocated EGTS is conflicting with the device's known EGTS, the device shall send an EGTS  
8 handshake command frame to the origin device of the EGTS handshake reply command frame. The  
9 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field set to three (EGTS duplicate allocation  
10 notification) and the Handshake Type subfield set to two (EGTS notify), with the EGTS Slot Identifier  
11 subfield in the EGTS descriptor set to the multi-superframe slot at which the EGTS duplicate allocated, the  
12 EGTS Length subfield in the EGTS descriptor to the length of the duplicate allocated EGTS and the Device  
13 short address to the address of the device for which the EGTS allocation replied.
- 14 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor corresponds to *macShortAddress*  
15 of the device, the MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of whether the EGTS  
16 allocation request was successful. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-  
17 GTS.confirm primitive with a status of SUCCESS (if the EGTS Slot Identifier in the EGTS descriptor was  
18 greater than zero) or DENIED (if the EGTS Slot Identifier in the EGTS descriptor was equal to zero or if the  
19 length did not match the requested length). After that, the Source device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake  
20 command frame to all its one-hop neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics  
21 field shall be set to one (EGTS allocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (EGTS  
22 notify), with the EGTS Slot Identifier subfield in the EGTS descriptor set to the value of the multi-  
23 superframe slot at which the new allocated EGTS begins, the EGTS Length subfield in the EGTS descriptor  
24 to the length of the allocated EGTS and the Device short address to the address of the destination device.
- 25 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS allocation notify, the device shall  
26 process the EGTS descriptor. The device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's newly allocated EGTS. If  
27 the newly allocated EGTS conflicts with the device's known EGTS, the device shall send an EGTS  
28 handshake command frame to the origin device of the EGTS handshake notify command frame. The  
29 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to three (EGTS duplicate  
30 allocation notification) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (EGTS notify), with the EGTS  
31 Slot Identifier subfield in the EGTS descriptor set to the multi-superframe slot at which the EGTS duplicate  
32 allocated, the EGTS Length subfield in the EGTS descriptor to the length of the duplicate allocated EGTS  
33 and the Device short address to the address of the device which sent the EGTS allocation notify.
- 34 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS duplicate allocation notification, the  
35 device shall reallocate the EGTS (see 7.5.10.3).
- 36 An example of EGTS allocation is shown in Figure 111.k.

Slot = tuple (time slot, channel)  
 MO = SO

Node 1 assigns slot (10, 15) for Device 3

2. EGTS reply, broadcast

Payload:

Dst addr (3)  
 new allocated ABT sub-block  
 {0000000000000000  
 0000100000000000  
 ...

1. EGTS request, unicast

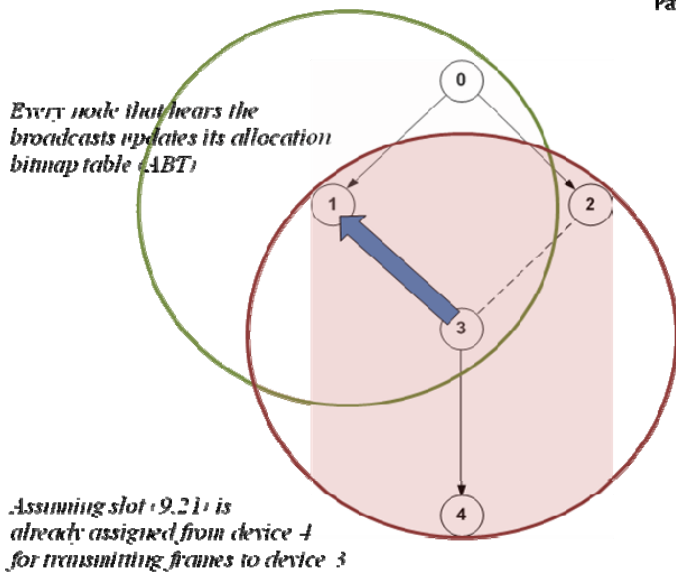
Payload:

Number of slots  
 ABT sub-block  
 {000000000100000  
 0000000000000000  
 ..  
 0000000000000000}

3. EGTS notify, broadcast

Payload:

Dst addr (1)  
 new allocated ABT sub-block  
 :0000000000000000  
 0000100000000000  
 ...  
 0000000000000000}



Every node that hears the broadcasts updates its allocation bitmap table (ABT)

Assuming slot (9, 21) is already assigned from device 4 for transmitting frames to device 3

1

2

Figure 111.k— Three-way Handshake for EGTS Allocation

3 7.5.10.7 EGTS deallocation

4 The CM-Source device is instructed to request the deallocation of an existing EGTS through the MLME-  
 5 GTS.request primitive (see 7.1.7.1) using the characteristics of the EGTS it wishes to deallocate. The  
 6 Destination device can request the deallocation of an existing EGTS if a deallocation request from the next  
 7 higher layer, or the expiration of the EGTS. From this point onward, the EGTS to be deallocated shall not be  
 8 used by the device, and its stored characteristics shall be reset.

9 When an EGTS deallocation is initiated by the next higher layer of the device, the MLME shall receive the  
 10 MLME-GTS.request primitive with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the Characteristics Type subfield of the  
 11 EGTSCharacteristics parameter set to zero (EGTS deallocation) and the EGTS Length subfield set according  
 12 to the characteristics of the EGTS to deallocate.

13 When an EGTS deallocation is due to the EGTS expiring, the MLME shall notify the next higher layer of the  
 14 change. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with the  
 15 EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the EGTSCharacteristics to the characteristics of the deallocated EGTS and the  
 16 Characteristics Type subfield set to one.

17 In the case of any the deallocation of an existing EGTS, the MLME shall send the EGTS handshake  
 18 command (see 7.3.10) to the corresponding device (the Source or Destination of which the EGTS to be  
 19 deallocated). The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to zero (EGTS  
 20 deallocation), and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to zero (EGTS request). The EGTS Length  
 21 subfield of the EGTSDescriptor shall be set according to the characteristics of the EGTS to deallocate. The  
 22 EGTS ABT Specification subfield shall be set according to the current allocation status of all one-hop  
 23 neighborhoods of the device request to deallocate the EGTS.

24 After sending the EGTS handshake request command frame, the device shall wait for at most  
 25 anEGTSRequestWaitingTime symbols, if no EGTS handshake reply command frame appears within this  
 26 time, the MLME of the device shall notify the next higher layer of the failure. This notification is achieved  
 27 when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive (see 7.1.7.2) with a status of NO\_DATA. Then  
 28 the device shall determine whether stop using its EGTS by the procedure described in 7.5.10.4.

- 1 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS deallocation request, the device shall  
2 attempt to deallocate the EGTS.
- 3 If the EGTS characteristics contained in the command do not match the characteristics of a known EGTS,  
4 the device shall ignore the request.
- 5 If the EGTS characteristics contained in the EGTS request command match the characteristics of a known  
6 EGTS, the MLME of the device shall deallocate the specified EGTS, update its ABT and notify the next  
7 higher layer of the change. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.indication  
8 primitive (see 7.1.7.3) with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the EGTS Characteristics parameter containing the  
9 characteristics of the deallocated EGTS and the Characteristics Type subfield set to one. Then, the device  
10 shall broadcast an EGTS handshake command to its one-hop neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of  
11 the EGTS Characteristics field of the EGTS handshake command shall be set to zero (EGTS deallocation),  
12 and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to one (EGTS reply). The EGTS Length subfield in the EGTS  
13 descriptor to the length of the successfully deallocated EGTS and the Device Short Address to the address of  
14 the device request deallocate EGTS. The EGTS ABT Specification subfield shall be set to represent the slots  
15 status after successful deallocation.
- 16 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command indicating an EGTS deallocation reply, the device shall process  
17 the EGTS descriptor.
- 18 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor does not correspond to  
19 *macShortAddress* of the device, the device updates its ABT to reflect all the neighbor's deallocated EGTS.
- 20 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor corresponds to *macShortAddress*  
21 of the device, the MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of whether the EGTS  
22 deallocation request was successful. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-  
23 GTS.confirm primitive with a status of SUCCESS (if the length in the EGTS descriptor matched the  
24 requested deallocation length) or DENIED (if the length in the EGTS descriptor did not match the requested  
25 deallocation length). Then, the device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake command to all its one-hop  
26 neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to zero (EGTS  
27 deallocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (Notify), with the EGTS Slot Identifier  
28 subfield and the EGTS Length subfield in the EGTS descriptor set to the identifier and the length of the  
29 EGTS deallocated respectively.
- 30 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command indicating an EGTS deallocation notify, the device shall  
31 process the EGTS descriptor. The device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's deallocated EGTS.

### 32 **7.5.10.8 EGTS reallocation**

- 33 A CM-device shall reallocate the EGTSs to fill the gap result from the deallocation of an EGTS or regulate  
34 the EGTS allocation when the duplicate allocation occurs.
- 35 If the EGTS reallocation is initiated by the next higher layer of the device, the MLME shall receive the  
36 MLME-GTS.request primitive with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the Characteristics subfield of the  
37 EGTSCharacteristics parameter set to two (EGTS Reallocation) and the EGTS Length subfield set according  
38 to the characteristics of the EGTS to reallocate.
- 39 If the EGTS reallocation is due to the receipt of the EGTS handshake duplicate allocation notification, the  
40 MLME shall notify the next higher layer of the conflicts. This notification is achieved when the MLME  
41 issues the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the EGTSCharacteristics set to  
42 the characteristics of the duplicate allocation EGTS and the Characteristics Type subfield set to three (EGTS  
43 Duplicate allocation).
- 44 If the device instructed to request reallocate EGTS is the source device which has requested the allocation of  
45 EGTS, the MLME shall generate an EGTS handshake command (see 7.3.10) to the destination device which  
46 has allocated the EGTS, with the Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set  
47 to two (EGTS reallocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to zero (EGTS request). The EGTS  
48 Length and the EGTS Slot Identifier subfields of the EGTSDescriptor field shall be set according to the  
49 desired characteristics of the reallocation EGTS. The EGTS ABT (Allocation Bitmap Table) Specification  
50 subfield shall be set according to the current allocation status of all the one-hop neighborhoods of the device.
- 51 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating an EGTS reallocation request, the destination  
52 device shall attempt to reallocate the EGTS.

- 1 If the EGTS characteristics contained in the command do not match the characteristics of a known EGTS,  
2 the destination device shall ignore the request.
- 3 If the EGTS characteristics contained in the EGTS request command match the characteristics of a known  
4 EGTS, the destination device shall first check if there is available capacity in the current Multi-superframe,  
5 based on the ABT sub-block maintained by the destination device, the length of the request reallocation  
6 EGTS and the ABT sub-block subfield in the EGTS handshake request command frame from the Source  
7 device. The Multi-superframe shall have available capacity if enough vacant slots exist in both ABT sub-  
8 block subfields of the Destination device and the Source device to satisfy the requested reallocation length.  
9 EGTSs shall be reallocated on a first-come-first-served basis by the Destination device provided there is  
10 sufficient bandwidth available.
- 11 If the EGTS is successfully reallocated, the destination device shall update its ABT, and notify the next  
12 higher layer of the reallocated EGTS by primitive MLME-GTS.indication with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE.
- 13 Then the destination device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake command to all its one-hop neighbors. The  
14 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field of the EGTS handshake command shall be  
15 set to two (EGTS reallocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to one (EGTS reply). If the  
16 EGTS was reallocated successfully, the EGTS Slot Identifier subfield in the EGTS descriptor shall be set to  
17 the multi-superframe slot at which the reallocated EGTS begins from, the EGTS Length subfield in the  
18 EGTS descriptor to the length of the reallocated EGTS and the EGTS ABT Specification subfield shall be  
19 set to represent the slots status after reallocation. If there was not sufficient capacity to reallocate the  
20 requested EGTS, the EGTS Slot Identifier shall be set to zero and the length set to the largest EGTS length  
21 that can currently be supported.
- 22 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command indicating an EGTS reallocation reply, the device shall process  
23 the EGTS descriptor.
- 24 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor does not correspond to  
25 *macShortAddress* of the device, the device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's reallocated EGTS. If the  
26 newly reallocated EGTS is conflicting with the device's known EGTS, the device shall send an EGTS  
27 handshake command to the origin device of the EGTS handshake reallocation reply command frame. The  
28 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to three (Duplicate Allocation  
29 Notification) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to zero (request).
- 30 If the address in the Device Short Address subfield of the EGTS descriptor corresponds to *macShortAddress*  
31 of the device, the MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of whether the EGTS  
32 reallocation request was successful. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-  
33 GTS.confirm primitive with a status of SUCCESS (if the EGTS Slot Identifier in the EGTS descriptor was  
34 greater than zero) or DENIED (if the EGTS Slot Identifier in the EGTS descriptor was equal to zero or if the  
35 length did not match the requested length). Then, the Source device shall broadcast an EGTS handshake  
36 command to all its one-hop neighbors. The Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field  
37 shall be set to two (EGTS reallocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to two (EGTS notify).
- 38 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command indicating an EGTS reallocation notify, the device shall process  
39 the EGTS descriptor. The device updates its ABT to reflect the neighbor's reallocated EGTS. If the newly  
40 reallocated EGTS conflicts with the device's known EGTS, the device shall send an EGTS handshake  
41 command to the origin device of the EGTS handshake notify command frame. The Characteristics Type  
42 subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set to three (EGTS Duplicate Allocation Notification) and  
43 the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to zero (request).
- 44 **7.5.10.9 EGTS expiration**
- 45 The MLME of the device shall attempt to detect when a device has stopped using an EGTS using the  
46 following rules:
- 47 — The MLME of the Destination device of EGTS shall assume that the source device is no longer  
48 using its EGTS if a data frame is not received from the source device in the EGTS at least every  $2*n$   
49 multi-superframes, where  $n$  is defined below.
  - 50 — The MLME of the Source device of EGTS shall assume that the destination device is no longer  
51 using its EGTS if an acknowledgement frame is not received from the destination device at least  
52 every  $2*n$  multi-superframes, where  $n$  is defined below. If the data frames sent in the EGTS do not

1 require acknowledgment frames, the MLME of the source device will not be able to detect whether  
 2 the destination device is using the corresponding EGTS.

3 The value of  $n$  is defined as follows:

$$4 \quad n = 2^{(8-\text{macBeaconOrder})} \quad 0 \leq \text{macBeaconOrder} \leq 8$$

$$5 \quad n = 1 \quad 9 \leq \text{macBeaconOrder} \leq 14$$

#### 6 **7.5.10.10 EGTS retrieve**

7 If a loss of synchronization occurs before its allocated EGTSs of current superframe starting, the Source  
 8 device shall be instructed to request the timestamp and the EGTS information through the MLME-  
 9 EGTSinfo.request primitive (see 7.1.18.1).

10 To request the timestamp and the EGTS information, the MLME of the source device  
 11 shall send an EGTS information request command frame (see 7.3.11) to the Destination  
 12 device. As the EGTS information request command frame containing an acknowledgment  
 13 request, the Destination device shall confirm the receipt of the EGTS information request  
 14 command frame by sending an acknowledgment frame.

15 On receipt of an EGTS information request command, the MLME of the Destination  
 16 device shall send an EGTS information reply command frame (see 7.3.12) before the end  
 17 of the Source device's EGTS slot of current superframe excepting the beacon slot,  
 18 including the timestamp and the EGTS parameters information to the Source device.

19 After sending the EGTS information request command frame and getting the acknowledgment from the  
 20 destination device, the Source device shall wait for at most *macMaxFrameTotalWaitTime* CAP symbols in a  
 21 beacon-enabled PAN, or symbols in a non-beacon-enabled PAN, if no EGTS information reply command  
 22 frame containing the timestamp and the EGTS information from the Destination device, the MLME of the  
 23 source device shall notify the next higher layer of the failure by the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive  
 24 (see 7.1.18.2) with a status of NO\_DATA.

25 On receipt of an EGTS information reply command frame containing the timestamp and the EGTS  
 26 information, the MLME of the Source device shall notify the next higher layer of the success. This  
 27 notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-EGTSinfo.confirm primitive with a status of  
 28 SUCCESS. Then the Source device shall synchronize to the Destination device by using the received  
 29 timestamp and continue to use its allocated EGTSs during current superframe.

#### 30 **7.5.10.11 EGTS change**

31 The Destination device allocates the EGTS to the Source device according to the first-come-first-served  
 32 basis. If the Destination device receives an EGTS handshake allocation request command frame from a  
 33 source device with a higher priority but the EGTSs it request have already been used out, the destination  
 34 device shall either reduce or restart part or all of the EGTSs which are being used for the lower priority data  
 35 transmission, and allocate new EGTSs for the higher priority data transmission. After the newly allocated  
 36 EGTSs for the higher priority data transmission is finished, the Destination device shall restart the EGTSs  
 37 which were reduced or restarted previously.

38 The procedure of EGTS change shall be initiated when a Destination device wants to reduce or restart the  
 39 allocated EGTSs through the MLME-GTS.request primitive (see 7.1.7.1).

40 When an EGTS change is initiated by the next higher layer of the Destination device, the MLME shall  
 41 receive the MLME-GTS.request primitive with the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the EGTS Characteristics Type  
 42 subfield of the EGTS Characteristics parameter set accordingly (i.e., 101 for EGTS Reduce or 110 for EGTS  
 43 Restart)

44 To request the change of an existing EGTS, the MLME of the Destination device shall send the EGTS  
 45 handshake request command frame (see 7.3.10) to the Source device. The EGTS Characteristics Type  
 46 subfield of the EGTS Characteristics field shall be set accordingly (i.e., 101 for EGTS Reduce or 110 for

1 EGTS Restart), and other subfields set according to the characteristics of the EGTS which the Destination  
2 device requests the Source device to change its original EGTS to.

3 The EGTS handshake request command frame for EGTS change contains an acknowledgment request (see  
4 7.3.10), and the Source device shall confirm its receipt of EGTS handshake change request command frame  
5 by sending an acknowledgment frame to the destination device.

6 On receipt of the acknowledgment from the source device, the MLME of the Destination device shall notify  
7 the next higher layer of the EGTS change. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-  
8 GTS.confirm primitive (see 7.1.7.2) with a status of SUCCESS, the EGTSFlag set to TRUE, the EGTS  
9 Characteristics Type subfield of the EGTSCharacteristics parameter set to 101 for EGTS Reduce or 110 for  
10 EGTS Restart accordingly, and other subfields set according to the characteristics of the EGTS which the  
11 Destination device requests the Source device to change its original EGTS to.

12 On receipt of an EGTS handshake request command frame for EGTS change from the destination device,  
13 the Source device shall immediately change its EGTS according to the EGTS Characteristics field in the  
14 EGTS handshake change request command frame. Then the MLME of the Source device shall notify the  
15 next higher layer of the change. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-  
16 GTS.indication primitive (see 7.1.7.3) with an EGTSCharacteristics parameter set according to the  
17 characteristics of the EGTS which the Destination device requests the Source device to change its original  
18 EGTS to.

### 19 **7.5.10.12 Robust EGTS allocation**

20 If the data transmitted in the EGTS requires higher transmission reliability, the device is instructed to request  
21 the allocation of a new Channel Hopping EGTS through the MLME-GTS.request primitive with the  
22 EGTSFlag set to TRUE and the EGTS Characteristics type subfield set to 100 (Robust EGTS Allocation).

23 To request the allocation of a new Robust EGTS, the MLME shall send an EGTS handshake command to  
24 the Destination device with the EGTS Characteristics type subfield of the EGTS characteristics parameter set  
25 to 100 (Robust EGTS Allocation) and the Handshake Type subfield shall be set to zero (EGTS request). The  
26 EGTS Length subfield of the EGTSDescriptor shall be set according to the desired characteristics of the  
27 required EGTS. The EGTS ABT Specification subfield shall be set according to the current allocation status  
28 of all one-hop neighborhoods of the Source device.

29 After sending the EGTS handshake request command frame, the source device shall wait for at most  
30 *anEGTSRequestWaitingTime* symbols, if no EGTS handshake reply command frame appears within this  
31 time, the MLME of the source device shall notify the next higher layer of the failure. This notification is  
32 achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive (see 7.1.7.2) with a status of  
33 NO\_DATA.

34 On receipt of an EGTS handshake command frame indicating a Robust EGTS Allocation request, the  
35 Destination device shall first decide whether allocating the Robust EGTS or the regular EGTS based on its  
36 own availability.

37 If the Destination device decides to allocate the Robust EGTS, it shall behave the same as  
38 allocating the regular EGTS except allocating EGTS ABT in a Channel Hopping mode,  
39 i.e. adjacent slots will be allocated different channels, and the channel selection depends  
40 on the Destination device's knowledge of current channel condition. The remaining parts  
41 of the Robust EGTS allocation are same with the regular EGTS allocation. Within the  
42 Robust EGTS, the device switches to the next channel every slot according to the channel  
43 sequence in the ABT.

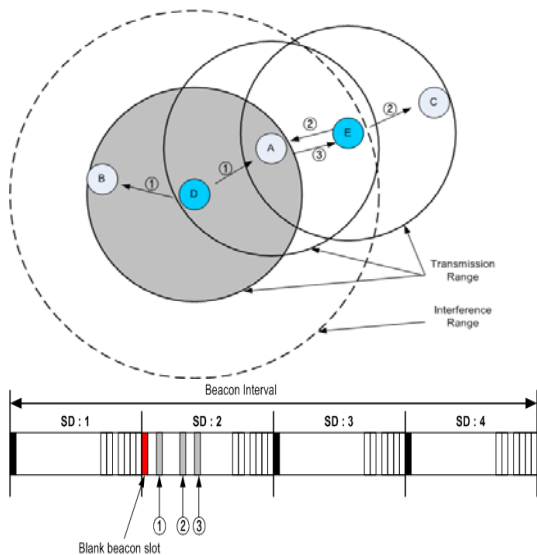
44

### 45 **7.5.10.13 Beacon Scheduling**

46 When a new node wants to join a network, first it scans the channel. The new device uses the MLME-  
47 SCAN.request primitive in order to initiate a channel scan over a given list of channels. It searches for all  
48 coordinators transmitting beacon frames within the maximum BI period. Then these neighboring nodes  
49 would share their information of beacon bitmap with the new node. The beacon bitmap indicates the beacon

1 frame allocation information for neighboring nodes. This field is expressed by bitmap method which orderly  
 2 represents the schedule of beacons. Corresponding bit shall be set to 1 if a beacon is allocated in that SD.  
 3 The new node will search the SD which is vacant (not set to 1) in all of the received beacon bitmap of  
 4 beacon frame. Once new node finds vacant SD, It uses it as its own SD.

5 There can be beacon slot collision when two or more nodes are trying to compete for same SD slot number.  
 6 As shown in Figure 111.1, node D and node E are new nodes that join the network. These new nodes will  
 7 receive the beacon bitmap from their neighboring nodes. As it can be seen that node A is a common  
 8 neighboring node. Thus it can be the case when both new nodes E and D request same vacant SD number  
 9 within same CAP. This happens due to hidden node problem, because node E and D are hidden to each  
 10 other, and cannot listen to each others transmission. When node A receives the SD number 2 request, within  
 11 same CAP, by nodes E and D then it would determine which node has requested first. Node A will reply the  
 12 beacon collision notification to the node which has requested later.



13  
14  
15 **Figure 111.1— New node joining the network**

#### 16 7.5.10.14 EGTS Synchronization

17 The new node discovers its neighboring node through the scanning process. Then it associate with one of the  
 18 neighboring node in order to be part of the network. The node which the new node associates with is called  
 19 its parent node.

20 Now the coordinator knows that the device would track its beacon. Thus the coordinator will determine the  
 21 transmission time of its beacon. This beacon timestamp value is set just before transmitting the beacon  
 22 frame. When the device gets this beacon timestamp value then it can synchronize with its parent coordinator.

23 The effect of collision is inevitable in multiple nodes scenario, where more than one node try to use the same  
 24 channel at the same time. In the case of collision, the node wait for some backoff duration and then it tries to  
 25 re-send. Thus in case of collision, beacon transmission timestamp does not become valid. In order to avoid  
 26 this problem, the coordinator sets *macDeferredBeaconUsed* value to be TRUE. When the device notice  
 27 *macDeferredBeaconUsed* value to be TRUE then it knows that coordinator uses CCA for transmitting its  
 28 beacon. Also the coordinator would add the number of tries it made for successful transmission. If the  
 29 coordinator would be able to send its beacon after 3<sup>rd</sup> try then it would set *DeferredBeaconFlag* value to be  
 30 3. On receipt of the beacon, the device would exactly knows when the beacon is sent (by adding beacon  
 31 timestamp with (*DeferredBeaconFlag* value \* 20 symbols)). Thus perfect time synchronization becomes  
 32 possible.

#### 33 7.5.10.15 Passive channel scan

34 Channel Diversity Specification in the received beacon frame shall update the value of  
 35 ChannelDiversitySpecification in PANDescriptor. This value is sent to the next higher layer via the MLME-



1 SCAN.confirm primitive. The value of Channel Offset subfield in the received beacon shall update the value  
 2 of *macChannelOffsetBitmap* in MAC PIB attributes. For instance, if ChannelOffset is set to 0x01, the value  
 3 of *macChannelOffsetBitmap* corresponding channel shall set to '1'. Thus, the value of  
 4 *macChannelOffsetBitmap* shall represent if the channel offset value is used among one hop neighbor  
 5 devices.

6

#### 7 **7.5.10.16 Updating superframe configuration and channel PIB attributes**

8 Subclause 7.5.2.3.4 applies. For CM-devices the following is additionally required.

9 If a PAN uses both of the EGTS and Channel Hopping mode (i.e., EGTSFlag is TRUE and  
 10 ChannelDiversityMode is '1'), the MAC sublayer shall update the values of *DCHDescriptor* with the values  
 11 of the DCHDescriptor parameter.

#### 12 **7.5.10.17 Beacon generation**

13 Subclause 7.5.2.4 applies. For CM-devices the following is additionally required.

14 If EGTS and Channel Hopping mode (i.e., EGTSFlag is TRUE and ChannelDiversityMode is '1') are used  
 15 in the PAN, the MAC sublayer shall set the Channel Diversity Specification field of the beacon frame. The  
 16 value of ChannelOffsetBitmap field, representing channel offset used among one hop neighbor devices, shall  
 17 be set to the value of *macChannelOffsetBitmap* in MAC PIB attributes.

#### 18 **7.5.10.18 Coexistence of beacon-enabled and non-beacon-enabled mode**

19 PANs that contain both the devices of beacon-enabled mode and the devices of non-beacon-enabled mode  
 20 shall include the Connection Devices.

21 The device of beacon-enabled mode shall either transmit periodic beacon or track the beacon for  
 22 communication in the PAN, the device of non-beacon-enabled mode shall neither transmit periodic beacon  
 23 nor track the beacon for communication in the PAN, and there are two operation modes in the Connection  
 24 Devices. First, the Connection Device can transmit periodic beacon to communicate with the devices of  
 25 beacon-enabled mode in the PAN and request the data from the devices of non-beacon-enabled mode in the  
 26 PAN. Second, the Connection Device can track the periodic beacon for communication and transmit the data  
 27 upon receipt of the data request commands from the devices of non-beacon-enabled mode in the PAN.

#### 28 **7.5.10.19 CM-Superframe structure**

29 Subclause 7.5.1.1 applies and for CM-devices with Low Energy Superframe Support shall  
 30 apply the following in addition.

31 If  $BO = 15$  and *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is FALSE, the coordinator shall not  
 32 transmit beacon frames except when requested to do so, such as on receipt of a beacon  
 33 request command. The value of *macSuperframeOrder* shall be ignored if  $BO = 15$ .  
 34 Moreover, if *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE the coordinator shall not  
 35 transmit beacon frames except when requested to do so, regardless of BO value.

36 If  $BO = 15$  and *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is FALSE, the superframe shall not  
 37 exist (the value of *macSuperframeOrder* shall be ignored),

#### 38 **7.5.10.20 CM-Contention access period (CAP)**

39 Subclause 7.5.1.1.1 applies and for CM-devices with Low Energy Superframe Support shall apply the  
 40 following in addition.

1 All frames, except acknowledgment and data frames that quickly follows the acknowledgment of a data  
 2 request command (see 7.5.6.3), transmitted in the CAP shall use a slotted CSMA-CA mechanism to access  
 3 the channel. A device transmitting within the CAP shall ensure that its transaction is complete (i.e., including  
 4 the reception of any acknowledgment) one IFS period (see 7.5.1.3) before the end of the CAP when  
 5 *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is FALSE. If this is not possible, the device shall defer its transmission  
 6 until the CAP of the following superframe. When *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, on the  
 7 other hand, transaction shall be ensured to be completed one IFS period before the end of the inactive period.  
 8 Finally, if a device senses frame in CAP that does not end within CAP when  
 9 *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is set to TRUE, the device may continue receiving the frame until it  
 10 ends before the end of the inactive period. When *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, the  
 11 coordinator shall not locate EGTSs in order to avoid the interference from the frames in CAP. When  
 12 *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, the coordinator shall notify the devices that already  
 13 associated or intend to associate the condition of *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* in the beacon frames.

#### 14 7.5.10.21 CM-Incoming and outgoing superframe timing

15 Subclause 7.5.1.2 applies and for CM-devices shall apply the following in addition.

16 The beacon order and superframe order may be equal for all superframes on a PAN. All  
 17 devices may interact with the PAN only during the active portion of a superframe.

#### 18 7.5.10.22 Multi-Channel adaptation

##### 19 7.5.10.22.1 General

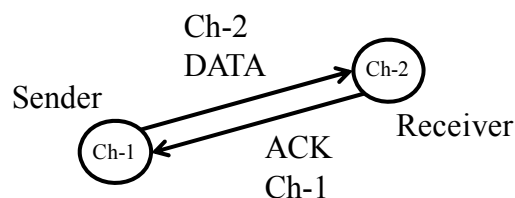
20 Single common channel approach may not be able to connect all devices in the PAN. The variance of  
 21 channel condition can be large and channel asymmetry between two neighboring device can happen. Multi-  
 22 channel adaptation is a solution to handle such case.

23 Two types of multi-channel adaptation is specified, which are synchronous multi-channel adaptation and  
 24 asynchronous multi-channel adaptation. The synchronous multi-channel adaptation is performed in beacon-  
 25 enabled mode, and is handled by EGTS as described in 7.5.4.4. The asynchronous multi-channel adaptation  
 26 is performed in non-beacon mode, and is described in this subclause.

##### 27 7.5.10.22.2 Receiver-based communication

28 It is possible that there exists no common channel that two devices can communicate in EGTS mode as there  
 29 are many available channels. In that case, each device selects its designated channel based on its local link  
 30 quality, and keep listening to its designated channel. When another device wants to communicate with it, the  
 31 sender device shall switch to the designated channel of the receiver device and transmit a DATA frame.  
 32 Then the sender device shall switch back to its own designated channel and keep listening. On receipt of the  
 33 data frame from the sender device, the receiver device shall switch to the designated channel of the sender  
 34 device and transmit an ACK frame (if requested). After sending the acknowledge frame, the receiver device  
 35 shall switch back to its own designated channel and keep listening at last.

36 Figure 111.m illustrated the receiver-based communications.



37

38

**Figure 111.m— Receiver-based communication**

### 1 7.5.10.23 Asymmetric multi-channel active scan

2 An asymmetric multi-channel active scan allows device to detect the designated channel of each coordinator  
3 or detect the best channel for the device.

4 The asymmetric multi-channel active scan over a specified set of logical channels is requested using the  
5 MLME-SCAN.request primitive with the ScanType parameter set to 0x04.

6 For each logical channel, the device shall first switch to the channel, by setting *phyCurrentChannel* and  
7 *phyCurrentPage* accordingly, and send a multi-channel beacon request command (see 7.3.11). Upon  
8 successful transmission of the multi-channel beacon request command, the device shall enable its receiver  
9 for [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* \* ( $2^n + 1$ )] symbols, where *n* is the value of the *ScanDuration* parameter.  
10 During this time, the device shall reject all non-beacon frames and record the information contained in all  
11 unique beacons in a PAN descriptor structure (see Table 55 in 7.1.5.1.1). After this time, the device shall  
12 switch to the next channel and repeat the same procedure. The device shall stop repeating this procedure  
13 after visiting every channel twice.

14 If *linkqualityscan* flag is FALSE, the device may stop after it receives a beacon and decide the current  
15 channel as its designated channel. If *linkqualityscan* flag is TRUE, the device make decision on its  
16 designated channel comparing LQI or RSSI of the received beacons.

17 On receipt of the multi-channel beacon request command, the coordinator shall transmit a beacon (see  
18 7.2.2.1) over a set of logical channels specified in the asymmetric multi-channel beacon request command.  
19 Upon successful transmission of the beacon, the coordinator shall switch to the next channel after  
20 [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* \* ( $2^n + 1$ )] symbols, where *n* is the value of the *ScanDuration* parameter, and  
21 send another beacon. The coordinator shall repeat the same procedure over all the logical channels specified  
22 in the asymmetric multi-channel beacon request command.

### 23 7.5.10.24 Multi-Channel Hello

24 Multi-channel hello mechanism allows a device to announce its designated channel to its one-hop neighbor  
25 devices.

26 After successfully performing the asymmetric active scan and the association, the device shall transmit the  
27 same multi-channel hello command on each channel sequentially starting from its designated channel. The  
28 device can request multi-channel hello reply by setting the Hello Reply Request of the multi-channel hello  
29 command to '1'. When its neighbors receives the multi-channel hello command with Hello Reply Request  
30 set to '1', each neighbor shall transmit a multi-channel hello reply command on designated channel of the  
31 requesting device.

### 32 7.5.10.25 Three-way Handshake Channel Probe

33 If the channel condition is bad, the device can probe other channels and switch to a better channel. After  
34 switching to the new channel, the device shall broadcast a multi-channel hello command to its one-hop  
35 neighbors to notify the new channel.

36 The channel probe over a specified logical channel is requested using the MLME-SCAN.request primitive  
37 with the ScanType parameter set to 0x05.

38 The device will check the condition of its designated channel by using the three-way handshake mechanism.  
39 The procedure of the three-way handshake channel probing is described as follows.

40 The request device sends a channel probe request command frame to one of its neighbors on the designated  
41 channel of the neighbor. On receipt of the channel probe request command, the neighbor sends a channel  
42 probe reply frame back to the request device on the originator's channel indicating in the channel probe  
43 request command. The request device shall check the LQI or RSSI of the channel probe reply frame upon  
44 receiving it. The request device determines that the link quality of the channel is bad if the device have not  
45 received the channel probe reply frame after [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* \* ( $2^n + 1$ )] symbols from the  
46 reception of probe reply, where *n* is the value of the *ScanDuration* parameter.

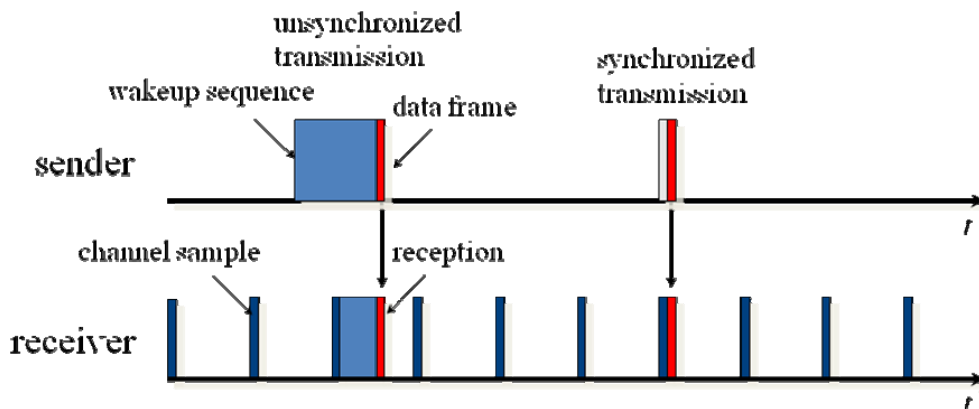
Comment [youcy6]: ?  
The description about the channel probe isn't three-way handshake, as there are only request and reply, only two-way handshake.  
Please check this problem.

## 1 7.5.11 LE-Transmission, reception and acknowledgement

### 2 7.5.11.1.1 Coordinated Sampled Listening (CSL)

#### 3 7.5.11.1.1.1 General

4 The coordinated sampled listening (CSL) mode is turned on when the PIB attribute `macCSLPeriod` is set to  
 5 non-zero and turned off when `macCSLPeriod` is set to zero. In CSL mode, transmission, reception and  
 6 acknowledgement work as follows. Figure 111.n illustrates the basic CSL operations.



7  
8 **Figure 111.n— Basic CSL operations**

#### 9 7.5.11.1.1.2 CSL idle listening

10 During idle listening, CSL performs a channel sample every `macCSLPeriod` milliseconds. If the channel  
 11 sample does not detect energy on the channel, CSL disables receiver for `macCSLPeriod` milliseconds  
 12 and then perform the next channel sample. If the channel sample receives a wakeup frame, CSL checks the  
 13 destination address in the wakeup frame. If it matches `macShortAddress`, CSL disables receiver until the  
 14 Rendezvous Time (RZTime) in the wakeup frame from now and then enables receiver to receive the payload  
 15 frame. Otherwise, CSL disables receiver until RZTime from now plus the transmission time of the payload  
 16 frame and the secure acknowledgment frame and then resume channel sampling.

#### 17 7.5.11.1.1.3 CSL transmission

18 Each CSL transmission of a payload frame is preceded with a sequence of back-to-back wakeup frames  
 19 (wakeup sequence).

#### 20 7.5.11.1.1.4 Unicast transmission

21 In unicast transmissions, the wakeup sequence length can be long or short based on the following two cases:

- 22 — Unsynchronized transmission: This is the case when the MAC layer does not know the CSL phase  
 23 and period of the destination device. In this case, the wakeup sequence length is  
 24 `macCSLMaxPeriod` or `macCSLPeriod` if `macCSLMaxPeriod` is zero.
- 25 — Synchronized transmission: This is the case when the MAC layer knows the CSL phase and period  
 26 of the destination device. In this case, the wakeup sequence length is only the guard time against  
 27 clock drift based on the last time when CSL phase and period updated about the destination device.

28 If the next higher layer has multiple frames to transmit to the same destination, it can set the FCF frame  
 29 pending bit to 1 in all but the last frame to maximize the throughput.

- 1 CSL unicast transmission is performed in the following steps by the MAC layer:
- 2 a) Perform CSMA-CA to acquire the channel
  - 3 b) If the previous acknowledged payload frame to the destination has the frame pending bit set
  - 4 and is within `macCSLFramePendingWaitT` milliseconds, go to step 5.
  - 5 c) If it is a synchronized transmission, wait until the destination device's next channel sample.
  - 6 d) For the duration of wakeup sequence length (short or long)
    - 7 1) Construct wakeup frame with the destination short address and remaining time to payload
    - 8 frame transmission (at the end of wakeup sequence)
    - 9 2) Transmit wakeup frame
  - 10 e) Transmit payload frame
  - 11 f) Wait for up to `macSecAckWaitDuration` symbol time for the secure acknowledgement frame if
  - 12 the ack request subfield in the payload frame is set to 1.
  - 13 g) If the secure acknowledgment frame is received, update CSL phase and period information
  - 14 about the destination device from the acknowledgment CSL sync field.
  - 15 h) If the secure acknowledgement frame is not received, start retransmission process.

#### 16 7.5.11.1.1.5 Multicast transmission

17 Multicast transmission is the same as unicast transmission except the following:

- 18 — It is always unsynchronized transmission.
- 19 — The destination address in wakeup frames is set to 0xffff.

#### 20 7.5.11.1.1.6 Utilizing the optional CSL sync field

21 Selectively the next higher layer may set the CSL sync bit in FCF in a frame to propagate CSL phase and

22 period information among the neighboring devices. When the bit is set, the MAC layer automatically

23 appends the CSL sync fields to the end of MHR.

#### 24 7.5.11.1.1.7 CSL reception

25 When a payload frame is received, the MAC layer performs the following steps:

- 26 a) Immediately send back a secure acknowledgment frame with the destination address set as the
- 27 transmitting device and its own CSL phase and period filled in the CSL sync field. The
- 28 acknowledgment frame can be optionally authenticated and/or encrypted depending on the
- 29 current security mode.
- 30 b) If CSL sync bit in the received payload frame is set to 1, the CSL phase and period
- 31 information about the transmitting device is updated with the information in the CSL sync
- 32 field.
- 33 c) If FCF frame pending bit in the received payload frame is set to 1, keep receiver on for
- 34 `macCSLFramePendingWaitT` milliseconds before going back to CSL idle listening.
- 35 Otherwise, start CSL idle listening.

#### 36 7.5.11.1.1.8 CSL over multiple channels

37 When `macCSLChannelMask` is set to non-zero, the CSL operations are extended to all the channels selected

38 in the bitmap. CSL idle listening performs channel sample on each channel from the lowest number to the

39 highest in a round-robin fashion. In the unsynchronized case, CSL transmission transmits a wakeup

40 sequence of the length *number\_of\_channels*\**macCSLMaxPeriod* before each payload frame. In the

41 synchronized case, CSL transmission calculates the next channel sample time and channel number and

42 transmits at the next channel sample time on the right channel with a short wakeup sequence. In this case,

43 CSL phase is the duration from now to the next channel sample on the first channel selected in

44 `macCSLChannelMask`.

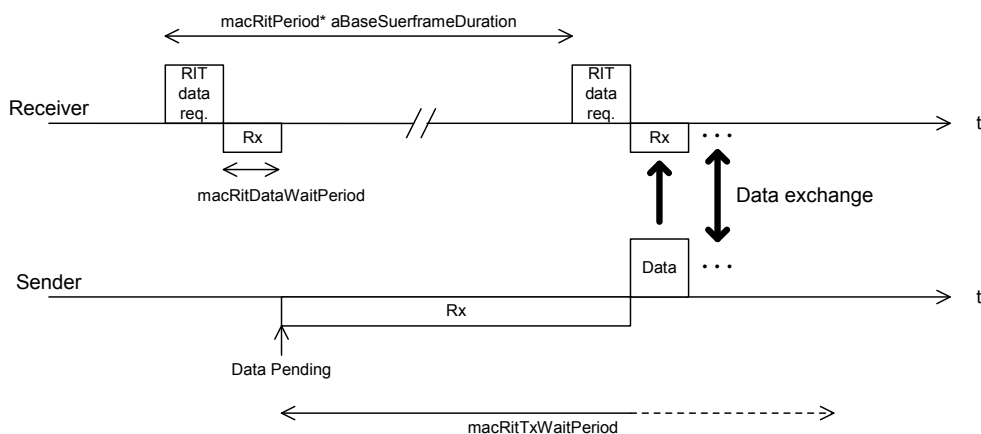
### 1 7.5.11.1.1.9 Turning off CSL mode to reduce latency

2 The next higher layer has the option to turn off the CSL mode to reduce latency for urgent messages. This  
 3 assumes that the higher layer manages the coordination between the sender and receiver in turning on and  
 4 off CSL mode. To turn off CSL, the higher layer simply sets `macCSLPeriod` and `macCSLMaxPeriod` to  
 5 zero. To turn on CSL, the high layer restores `macCSLPeriod` and `macCSLMaxPeriod` to their previous non-  
 6 zero values. To request a neighboring device to turn off CSL, the higher layer must send a frame to the  
 7 device with frame pending bit set to 1. This prevents CSL from turning off the radio before the request is  
 8 processed.

### 9 7.5.11.1.2 Receiver Initiated Transmission (RIT)

10 The Receiver Initiated Transmission (RIT) is an alternative low energy MAC for non beacon-enabled PAN  
 11 (BO=15). RIT mode is turned on when PIB attribute `macRitPeriod` is set to non-zero value and is turned off  
 12 when `macRitPeriod` is set to zero. In RIT mode, transmission, reception and acknowledgement work as  
 13 follows.

14 RIT mode is applicable to low duty cycle, low traffic load type of applications and especially suitable in the  
 15 case that consecutive radio emission time is limited by regional or national regulation (e.g., 950MHz band in  
 16 Japan). `macCSLPeriod` (in coordinated sample listening) and `macRitPeriod` cannot be set to non-zero value  
 17 at the same time. Figure 111.o illustrates the basic RIT operations.



18

19 **Figure 111.o— Basic RIT operations**

### 20 7.5.6.8.1 Periodical RIT data request transmission and reception

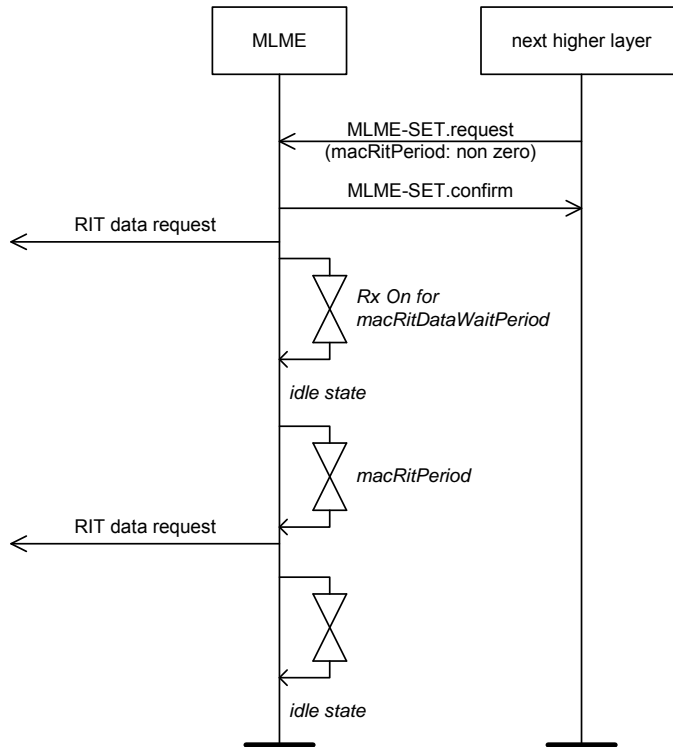
21 In RIT mode, a device transmits RIT data request command every `macRitPeriod` with a use of unslotted  
 22 CSMA-CA. The destination address of the command may be broadcast address (0xffff) or the address of  
 23 intended transmitter of data (associated coordinator). After the transmission of RIT data request command  
 24 frame, the device waits `macRitDataWaitPeriod` for incoming frame (except RIT data request frame) and  
 25 goes back to idle state till the next periodical transmission of RIT data request command. When a device is  
 26 in the receiving state after transmission of RIT data request command, RIT data request command frame  
 27 from another device shall be discarded.

28 Upon reception of a data frame after the transmission of RIT data request command, it notifies its arrival to  
 29 the next higher layer by instigating `MCPS-DATA.indication`. Upon reception of a data frame with error  
 30 (FCS or security), it notifies its erroneous reception to the next higher layer by instigating `MLME-FRAME-`  
 31 `ERROR.indication`.

32 At this point (instigation of `MCPS-DATA.indication` or `MLME-FRAME-ERROR.indication`), the device  
 33 may set `macRitPeriod` primitive to zero (RIT off) at the discretion of the next higher layer. If this is the case,  
 34 it will stop periodical transmission of RIT data request command and become always active until  
 35 `macRitPeriod` primitive is set to non zero value by the next higher layer again. During this period

1 (*macRitPeriod* equals to zero), all transactions will be handled as those of normal non beacon-enabled PAN  
 2 (RxOnWhenIdle: False).

3 Figure 111.p shows the Message sequence chart for starting RIT mode.



4  
5

6 **Figure 111.p— Message sequence chart for starting RIT mode**

7

8 **7.5.11.1.3 Data transmission in RIT mode**

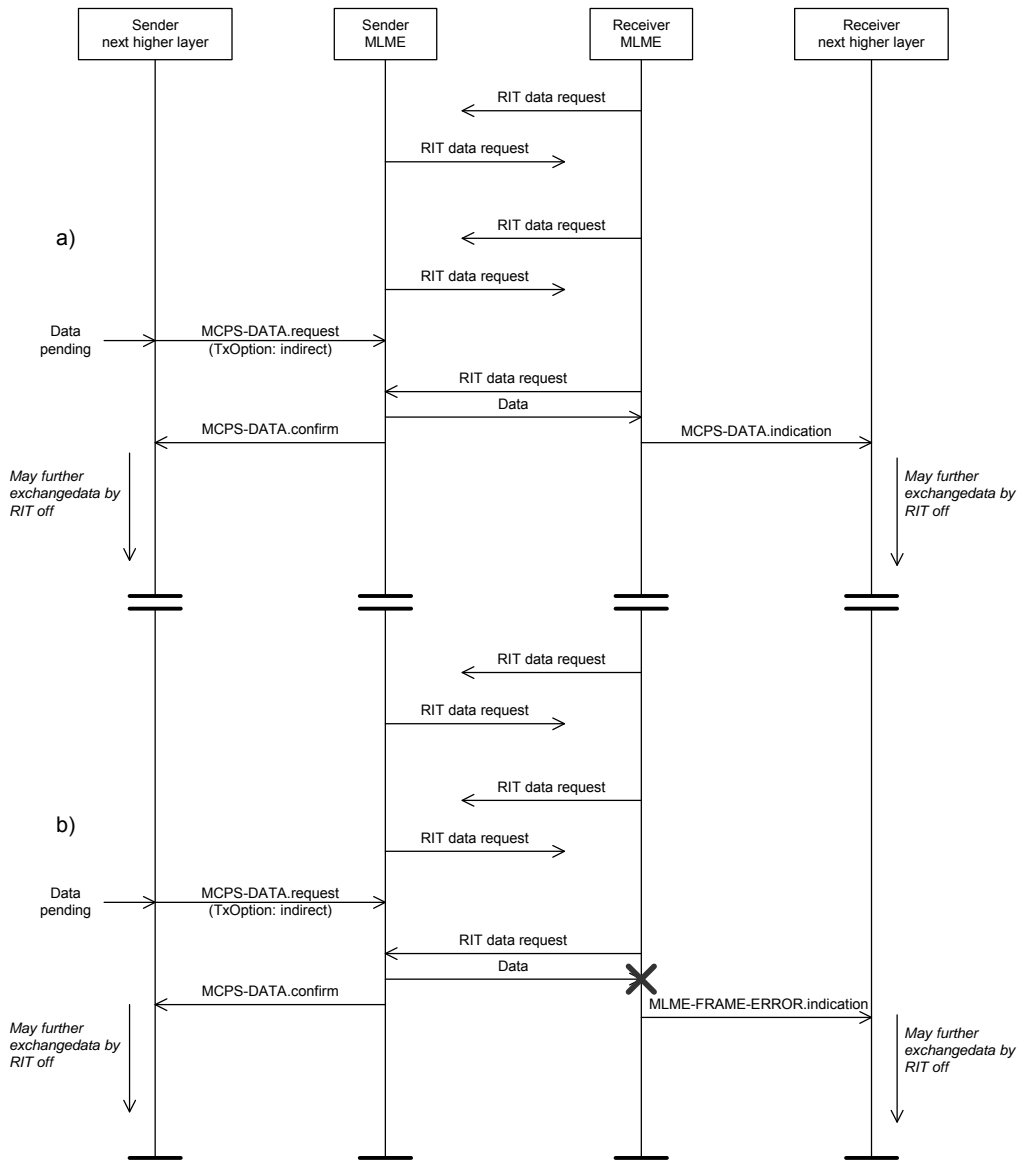
9 In order to transmit data frame in RIT mode, MCPS-DATA.request primitive (with TxOption indirect) shall  
 10 be instigated by the next higher layer at first. When the primitive is instigated, the device shall stop its  
 11 periodical transmission of RIT data request, enable its receiver and wait reception of RIT data request  
 12 command frame from neighboring devices for at most *macRitTxWaitTime*. During period, all other frames  
 13 except RIT data request command shall be discarded.

14 Upon reception of RIT data request command frame, the MAC sublayer sends the pending data with a use of  
 15 unslotted CSMA-CA. In case that the Destination PAN identifier field and the Destination address field of  
 16 the received RIT data request command are broadcast (0xffff) and the DstPANId and DstAddr parameters of  
 17 instigated MCPS-DATA.request are also broadcast, the Destination PAN identifier field and the Destination  
 18 Address field of the outgoing data frame shall be set as the Source PAN identifier field and the Source  
 19 Address field of the received RIT data request command, respectively.

20 At the completion of data transmission, MCPS-DATA.confirm shall be instigated by the MAC sublayer to  
 21 the next higher layer. At this point, the device shall restart its transmission of periodical RIT data request  
 22 transmission. Also at this point, the device may set *macRitPeriod* primitive to zero (RIT off) at the discretion  
 23 of the next higher layer. If this is the case, it will continue to stop periodical transmission of RIT data request  
 24 command and become always active until *macRitPeriod* primitive is set to non zero value by the next higher  
 25 layer again. During this period (*macRitPeriod* equals to zero), all transactions will be handled as those of  
 26 normal non beacon-enabled PAN (RxOnWhenIdle: False).

1 **7.5.11.1.4 Multicast transmission**

2 Multicast transmission shall not be supported in RIT mode.



3

4 **Figure 111.q— Message sequence chart for data transmission in RIT mode**

5 **7.6 Security suite specifications**

6 **7.7 Message sequence charts illustrating MAC-PHY interaction**



## Annex L (informative)

### Bibliography

1  
2  
3  
4  
5

#### 6 L.1 Documents for MAC enhancements in support of LL-applications

- 7 — 15-09/0254r0 Proposal for Factory Automation presentation of proposal for factory automation at  
8 March 09 IEEE 802.15.4e meeting
- 9 — 15-08/0827r0 Shared Group Timeslots presentation with further details on Shared Group Timeslots
- 10 — 15-09/0228r0 Proposal for Factory Automation text of proposal for factory automation at March 09  
11 IEEE 802.15.4e meeting
- 12 — 15-08/0420r2 Extending the MAC Superframe of 802.15.4 Spec presentation with separate GACK  
13 mechanism
- 14 — 15-08/0503r0 Preliminary Proposal for Factory Automation presentation of preliminary proposal for  
15 factory automation at July 08 IEEE 802.15.4e meeting
- 16 — 15-08/0571r1 Proposal for Factory Automation presentation of proposal for factory automation at  
17 September/November 08 IEEE 802.15.4e meetings
- 18 — 15-08/0572r0 Proposal for Factory Automation text of proposal for factory automation at September  
19 08 IEEE 802.15.4e meeting  
20

## Annex M (informative)

### Requirements of industrial and other application domains

#### M.1 General

The intentions of these add-ons are to enhance and add functionality to the 802.15.4-2009 MAC to

- a) better support the industrial markets and
- b) permit compatibility with modifications being proposed within the Chinese WPAN.

This functionality will facilitate industrial applications (such as addressed by IEC 62591 and the ISA100.11a), and those enhancements defined by the Chinese WPAN standard that aren't included in the Amendment of TG4c.

Industrial applications have requirements that are not addressed by the edition 2009 such as low latency, robustness in the harsh industrial RF environment, and determinism.

The Chinese Wireless Personal Area Network (CW PAN) standard has identified enhancements to improve network reliability and increase network throughput to support higher duty-cycle data communication applications.

This amendment addresses coexistence with wireless protocols such as 802.11, 802.15.1, 802.15.3, and 802.15.4.

Specifically, the MAC enhancements are grouped into two categories:

- a) Industrial and other application domains and
- b) Additional functional improvements.

To identify easier the specific amendments to which category these apply in the normative clauses, the specific subclauses are named with the following acronyms in the order as they appear here.

- a) Process automation (PA),
- b) Low latency networks (LL)
- c) Commercial (CM)
- d) ?Smart utility networks (SUN)? (reserved for future requests)
- e) ?(RFID)? (reserved for future requests)

The question marks will disappear in the final version. These marked topics are potential candidates, but it is not decided nor limited to those.

Additional functional improvements are:

- a) Low Energy (LE)
- b) ?Overhead reduction/Security(ORS)? (reserved for future submissions)

The question marks will disappear in the final version. These marked topics are potential candidates, but it is not decided nor limited to those.

The convention as used in Clause 7 is that same headings needed for different solutions based on different requirements have a prefix as the given acronyms above to differentiate the subclauses.

EXAMPLES;

- PA-Heading
- LL-Heading
- CM-Heading

## 1 **M.2 Process automation (PA)**

2 Typical parts of the application domain of process automation are facilities for

- 3 — Oil & gas industry,
- 4 — Food & beverage products,
- 5 — Chemical products
- 6 — Pharmaceutical products
- 7 — Water/waist water treatments
- 8 — etc.

9 For this application domain exists the following major requirements:

- 10 — IEEE 802.15.4 header extensions for mesh support
  - 11 • Additional addresses (source, destination)
  - 12 • Sequence number
  - 13 • TTL („transmissions to live“)
- 14 — Framework for choosing path selection mechanisms
  - 15 • Path selection protocol
  - 16 • Link metrics

## 17 **M.3 Low latency networks (LL)**

### 18 **M.3.1 Typical application domains for LL-networks**

19 Typical parts of the application domain of low latency networks are facilities for

- 20 — Factory automation as for automotive manufacturing
- 21 — Robots
- 22 — Suspension tracks
- 23 — Portable machine tools
- 24 — Milling, turning
- 25 — Robot revolver
- 26 — Filling
- 27 — Cargo
- 28 — Airport logistics
- 29 — Post
- 30 — Packaging industry
- 31 — Special engineering
- 32 — Conveyor technique
- 33 — etc.

34 For this application domain exists the following major requirements:

- 35 — High determinism

- 1 — High reliability
- 2 — Low latency:
  - 3 • transmission of sensor data in  $\leq 10$  ms
  - 4 • low round-trip time
- 5 — Many sensors per gateway
  - 6 • might be more than 100 sensors per gateway
- 7 — Assume controlled environment (factory floor)
- 8 — Configuration for optimal performance
- 9 — Network management and frequency planning for avoidance of co-existence issues.
- 10 — Roaming capability (no channel hopping)

### 11 M.3.2 Application overview

12 Factory automation comprises today a large number of sensors and actuators observing and controlling the  
 13 production. Sensors and actuators are located for example at robots, suspension tracks and portable tools in  
 14 the automotive industry, collect data on machine tools, such as milling or turning machines and control  
 15 revolving robots. Further application areas are control of conveyor belts in cargo and logistics scenarios or  
 16 special engineering machines. Depending on the specific needs of different factory automation branches  
 17 many more examples could be named.

18 Common to these sensor applications in factory automation context is the requirement of low latency and  
 19 high cyclic determinism. The performance should allow for reading sensor data from 20 sensors within  
 20 10ms.

21 Cabling these sensors is very time consuming and expensive. Furthermore, cables are a frequent source for  
 22 failures due to the harsh environment in a factory and may cause additional costs by production outage.

23 Wireless access to sensors and actuators solves the cabling issue and provides also advantages in case of  
 24 mobility and retrofit situations.

25 Wireless technologies that could be applied for the factory automation scenario include 802.11 (WLAN),  
 26 802.15.1 (Bluetooth) and 802.15.4. 802.15.4 is designed for sensor applications and offers the lowest energy  
 27 consumption as well as the required communication range and capacity. Moreover, four 802.15.4 channels  
 28 can be utilized in good coexistence with three non-overlapping WLAN channels (cf. **Error! Reference**  
 29 **source not found.**). Bluetooth offers good real-time capabilities, but interferes inevitably with any existing  
 30 WLAN installations.

31 802.15.4 is a worldwide and successfully applied standard for wireless and low power transmission of sensor  
 32 data. Different protocols on top of 802.15.4 (WirelessHART™ according to IEC 62591, ISA100.11a or  
 33 ZigBee) in the context of process automation are already in the process of standardization. Those protocols  
 34 aim at different requirements, but employ the same physical layer hardware as the proposed solution for  
 35 factory automation, which indicates potential hardware synergies and cost savings. Thus, a solution for  
 36 factory automation based on 802.15.4 would be beneficial.

37 802.15.4 operates usually in Carrier Sense Multiple Access (CSMA) mode which gives no guarantees for  
 38 media access. Optionally, 802.15.4 specifies the beacon-enabled mode which defines a TDMA like  
 39 superframe structure with Guaranteed Time Slots (GTS) for deterministic access. The performance of 7 GTS  
 40 in an interval of 15ms does not fulfill the factory automation requirements and makes not full use of the  
 41 available capacity. Therefore a modification of the 802.15.4 MAC for application in industrial factory  
 42 automation, i.e. defining a fine granular deterministic TDMA access, is envisaged.

1

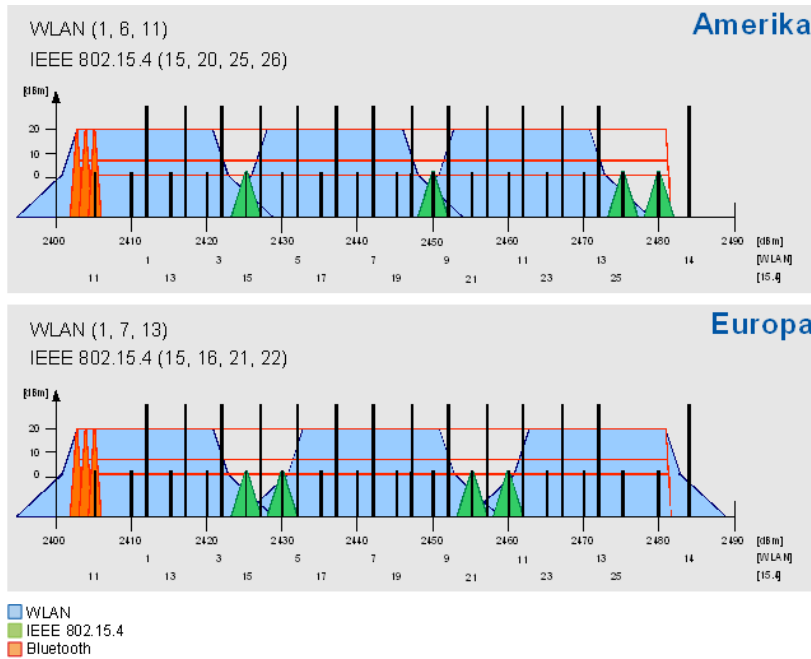


Figure M.1—RF technology coexistence in the 2.4GHz ISM band.

2

### 3 M.3.3 Requirements and Assumptions

4 The above mentioned factory automation applications impose the following requirements to a wireless  
 5 system:

- 6 — high determinism,
- 7 — high reliability,
- 8 — low latency, i.e. transmission of sensor data in  $\leq 10$ ms,
- 9 — low round trip time,
- 10 — support for many sensors per gateway.

11 The proposed TDMA scheme, as described in the remainder of this document, supports these requirements.  
 12 Allocating a dedicated time slot for each sensor provides a deterministic system. The 802.15.4 DSSS coding  
 13 together with the exclusive channel access for each sensor ensures high reliability of the system. Small time  
 14 slots and short packets lead to superframes as small as 10ms, which provides a latency of less than 10ms and  
 15 a low round trip time. The number of slots in a superframe determines the number of sensors that can access  
 16 each channel. By operating the gateway with multiple transceivers on different channels, a high number of  
 17 sensors is supported.

18 The proposed system needs to be operated in a controlled configuration to achieve the required performance.  
 19 Thus, it is assumed that the system is operated in a controlled environment with frequency planning. The  
 20 TDMA channels are allocated in a way that.

21

### 22 M.4 Commercial (CM)

23 Typical parts of the application domain of commercial networks are facilities for

- 24 — etc.

25 For this application domain exists the following major requirements:

1 — ...

2 **M.5 Low energy (LE)**

3 For this general improvement....

4

5 **M.6 Channel Diversity**

6 Annex M.6 provides tutorial material for a better understanding for the different solutions specified in  
7 Clauses 7.

8

9

10